

An abstract background featuring a collection of 3D rectangular blocks in white, grey, and red, arranged in a staggered, architectural pattern.

# FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 IaaS Features Handbook

Version 1.10  
FUJITSU LIMITED

All Rights Reserved, Copyright FUJITSU LIMITED 2015-2016

# Preface

## Purpose of This Manual

---

This document explains the functions and services provided by FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 IaaS (K5 IaaS). Use this document in the following cases when developing your applications or services by using K5 IaaS:

- When considering using the services and functions of K5 IaaS (and combinations thereof) that can be used to develop your applications and services that are intended for users
- When considering the scope of system development, the services and functions provided, and the scope of the required design to establish the applications that are intended for users

## Audience for This Manual

---

This manual is intended for those involved in the planning and developing of applications or services using K5 IaaS. To read this manual, you need to possess the following knowledge:

- Basic knowledge of virtualization technology (hypervisors, virtual servers, virtual storage, virtual networks)
- Basic knowledge of OpenStack
- Basic knowledge of your OS
- Basic knowledge of the Internet and Intranet
- Basic security knowledge
- Basic knowledge of system operation, including backups, monitoring, and redundancy

## Organization of Manuals

---

Refer to the related manuals listed below according to your purposes and methods of use.

| Manual Title                           | Purposes and Methods of Use                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IaaS Features Handbook (this document) | This document explains the functions provided by this service in detail.                                                                                                            |
| API User's Guide                       | This document provides instructions on how to use the REST API, including how to build an API execution environment and how to use a sample script that suits the sequence you use. |
| API Reference Manual                   | This document includes detailed information about how to use the REST API.                                                                                                          |
| IaaS Heat Template Specifications      | This document explains the format of the Heat Orchestration Template (HOT) that you create in order to use the orchestration function.                                              |
| IaaS Service Portal User Guide         | This document explains how to use the functions provided by this service via Service Portal (Web GUI).                                                                              |
| K5 Portal User Guide                   | This document explains how to use the functions, including registration and user information management, provided by K5 Portal.                                                     |

## Abbreviations Used in This Manual

---

In this manual, product names are abbreviated as follows.

| Official Name                                | Abbreviation    |         |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------|
| FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 IaaS                | K5 IaaS         |         |
| Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 SE R2        | Windows 2012 R2 | Windows |
| Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 SE R2        | Windows 2008 R2 |         |
| Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 EE R2        |                 |         |
| Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 6.5 (for Intel64) | RHEL6.5         | Linux   |
| Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 7.2 (for Intel64) | RHEL7.2         |         |
| Community Enterprise Operating System 6.5    | CentOS 6.5      | CentOS  |
| Community Enterprise Operating System 7.2    | CentOS 7.2      |         |
| Red Hat Update Infrastructure                | RHUI            |         |
| Windows Server Update Services               | WSUS            |         |
| VMware® vSphere®                             | VMware vSphere  | VMware  |
| VMware® ESX®                                 | ESX             |         |
| VMware® ESXi™                                | ESXi            |         |
| VMware® vCenter Server™                      | vCenter Server  |         |
| VMware® vSphere® Client                      | vSphere Client  |         |
| VMware Tools™                                | VMware Tools    |         |

## Trademarks

- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server and other Microsoft product names and model names are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Java is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and its subsidiaries or affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- Xeon is a trademark of Intel Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Linux® is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and/or other countries.
- Red Hat and Red Hat Enterprise Linux are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. registered in the United States and/or other countries.
- Ubuntu is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.
- OpenStack is a registered trademark of OpenStack, LLC in the United States.
- VMware and VMware product names are either trademarks or registered trademarks of VMware, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- SAP and SAP logos, SAP R/3, mySAP.com, mySAP Business Suite, and other SAP products are either trademarks or registered trademarks of SAP AG in Germany and/or other countries.
- Akamai and Akamai Intelligent Platform are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Akamai Technologies, Inc.
- Other company names and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

In this manual, the registered trademark symbols (™ or ®) next to system names or product names have been omitted.

## Export Administration Regulations

When exporting or giving this document to a third party, be sure to familiarize yourself with the regulations related to export administration valid in your country of residence and the United States, and follow the necessary procedures.

## Note

---

- The content of this manual may change without prior notice.
- The reproduction of this manual without permission is prohibited.
- We do not assume responsibility for any violation of patent rights or any other rights of a third party that may occur due to the use of the data in this manual.



# Revision History

| Edition | Date of Update | Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Overview                                               |
|---------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1.2     | Jan. 18, 2016  | <a href="#">Procedure to Run Sysprep on Windows OS</a> on page 44                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Description added                                      |
|         |                | <a href="#">Logging in to a Virtual Server</a> on page 18<br><a href="#">IPsec VPN Function</a> on page 113                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Points to note added                                   |
| 1.3     | Feb. 29, 2016  | <a href="#">Sharing Virtual Server Images</a> on page 43<br><a href="#">NAS Software Image</a> on page 96<br><a href="#">SSL-VPN Connection</a><br><a href="#">Creating a Virtual Database Server</a> on page 139                                                                                                                      | Function added                                         |
|         |                | <a href="#">Preset Roles and Privileges</a> on page 206<br><a href="#">Software Support Service</a> on page 29                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Description modified                                   |
| 1.4     | Apr. 1, 2016   | Compute overall                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Functional category changed                            |
|         |                | <a href="#">Dedicated Virtual Server</a> on page 20<br><a href="#">Software Provision Service</a> on page 28<br><a href="#">Virtual Server for SAP</a><br><a href="#">Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP</a> on page 82                                                                                                                  | Function added                                         |
|         |                | New User Registration<br>User Management                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Function transferred due to establishment of K5 Portal |
|         |                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                        |
| 1.5     | Apr. 7, 2016   | <a href="#">Region</a> on page 5<br><a href="#">Region Management</a> on page 205<br>User Management                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Function added due to addition of new region           |
|         |                | <a href="#">Port Management</a> on page 109<br><a href="#">Limiting Values</a> on page 218                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Description modified                                   |
| 1.6     | May 19, 2016   | Application Deployment<br>Message Queue                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Description of unprovided functions deleted            |
|         |                | <a href="#">Checking Console Log</a> on page 20<br><a href="#">Dedicated Virtual Server</a> on page 20<br><a href="#">Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP</a> on page 82<br><a href="#">Table 90: Creating a Port (List of Items That Can Be Set)</a> on page 109<br><a href="#">Table 97: List of Firewall Rule Settings</a> on page 115 | Description modified                                   |

| Edition | Date of Update | Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Overview             |
|---------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
|         |                | <a href="#">Setup of an OpenVPN Client (Windows)</a><br><a href="#">Limiting Values</a> on page 218                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                      |
|         |                | <a href="#">Available Commands and SQL Statements</a> on page 150                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Article added        |
| 1.7     | Aug. 4, 2016   | <a href="#">OS Provision Service</a> on page 24<br><a href="#">OS Patch/Update Settings</a> on page 25<br><a href="#">Japanese Language Settings for Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS (Version 7.x)</a> on page 27<br><a href="#">Software Support Service</a> on page 29<br><a href="#">System Storage</a> on page 86<br><a href="#">List of Software Support Service IDs</a> on page 230 | OS image added       |
| 1.8     | Aug. 19, 2016  | <a href="#">Content Delivery Service</a> on page 167<br><a href="#">Limiting Values</a> on page 218                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Function added       |
| 1.9     | Sep. 16, 2016  | <a href="#">Software Provision Service</a> on page 28<br><a href="#">SQL Server 2014 Standard Edition Usage Guide</a> on page 241                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Software image added |
| 1.10    | Nov. 10, 2016  | <a href="#">Creating/Deleting a Virtual Server</a> on page 12<br><a href="#">Dedicated Virtual Server</a> on page 20<br><a href="#">Virtual Server Export Service</a> on page 60<br><a href="#">Load Distribution Condition Settings</a> on page 127<br><a href="#">Predefined Security Policies</a> on page 236<br><a href="#">Creating a Virtual Database Server</a> on page 139        | Function added       |
|         |                | <a href="#">NAS Software Image</a> on page 96<br><a href="#">Limiting Values</a> on page 218                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Description modified |

# Contents

|                                                                                           |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Part 1: Preface.....                                                                      | 1  |
| 1.1 Service Concept.....                                                                  | 2  |
| 1.1.1 Service Overview.....                                                               | 2  |
| 1.1.2 Overview of Services.....                                                           | 3  |
| 1.2 Location Services.....                                                                | 5  |
| 1.2.1 Region.....                                                                         | 5  |
| 1.2.2 Availability Zone.....                                                              | 10 |
| Part 2: Compute.....                                                                      | 11 |
| 2.1 Standard Services.....                                                                | 12 |
| 2.1.1 Virtual Server.....                                                                 | 12 |
| 2.1.1.1 Creating/Deleting a Virtual Server.....                                           | 12 |
| 2.1.1.2 Provisioning Script Function.....                                                 | 14 |
| 2.1.1.3 Scaling Up and Scaling Down of a Virtual Server.....                              | 15 |
| 2.1.1.4 Operations on a Virtual Server.....                                               | 15 |
| 2.1.1.5 Server Group Function.....                                                        | 17 |
| 2.1.1.6 Logging in to a Virtual Server.....                                               | 18 |
| 2.1.1.7 Key Pair Management Function.....                                                 | 19 |
| 2.1.1.8 Checking Console Log.....                                                         | 20 |
| 2.1.2 Dedicated Virtual Server.....                                                       | 20 |
| 2.1.2.1 Dedicated Virtual Server.....                                                     | 20 |
| 2.1.3 OS Provision Service.....                                                           | 24 |
| 2.1.3.1 OS Provision Service.....                                                         | 24 |
| 2.1.3.2 OS Patch/Update Settings.....                                                     | 25 |
| 2.1.3.3 Japanese Language Settings for Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS (Version 6.x)..... | 26 |
| 2.1.3.4 Japanese Language Settings for Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS (Version 7.x)..... | 27 |
| 2.1.4 Software Provision Service.....                                                     | 28 |
| 2.1.4.1 Software Provision Service.....                                                   | 28 |
| 2.1.5 Software Support Service.....                                                       | 29 |
| 2.1.5.1 Software Support Service.....                                                     | 29 |
| 2.1.6 Auto-Scaling.....                                                                   | 33 |
| 2.1.6.1 Auto-Scaling Settings.....                                                        | 33 |
| 2.1.6.2 Health Check Function.....                                                        | 38 |
| 2.1.6.3 Auto-Scaling Scheduler Function.....                                              | 41 |
| 2.1.7 Image.....                                                                          | 42 |
| 2.1.7.1 Managing Virtual Server Images.....                                               | 42 |
| 2.1.7.2 Sharing Virtual Server Images.....                                                | 43 |
| 2.1.7.3 Procedure to Run Sysprep on Windows OS.....                                       | 44 |
| 2.1.8 Virtual Server Import Service.....                                                  | 46 |
| 2.1.8.1 Overview of Functions.....                                                        | 46 |
| 2.1.8.1.1 Virtual Server Import Service.....                                              | 46 |
| 2.1.8.2 Procedure on the Migration Source Virtual Environment.....                        | 49 |
| 2.1.8.2.1 Migrating an Image of Windows Server OS.....                                    | 49 |
| 2.1.8.2.2 Installing Agent Software for Migration.....                                    | 50 |
| 2.1.8.2.3 Migrating an Image of CentOS.....                                               | 53 |
| 2.1.8.2.4 Migrating an Image of Ubuntu.....                                               | 56 |
| 2.1.8.2.5 Capturing Images of a Virtual Server.....                                       | 58 |

|                                                                            |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 2.1.8.3 Procedure on the K5 IaaS Environment.....                          | 58  |
| 2.1.8.3.1 Transferring Images.....                                         | 58  |
| 2.1.8.3.2 Virtual Server Image Import Function.....                        | 59  |
| 2.1.9 Virtual Server Export Service.....                                   | 60  |
| 2.1.9.1 Overview of Functions.....                                         | 60  |
| 2.1.9.1.1 Virtual Server Export Service.....                               | 60  |
| 2.1.9.2 Procedure on the Migration Source Virtual Server.....              | 63  |
| 2.1.9.2.1 Configuring Settings on a Virtual Server in Advance.....         | 63  |
| 2.1.9.3 Procedure on the K5 IaaS Environment.....                          | 64  |
| 2.1.9.3.1 Creating Virtual Server Images.....                              | 64  |
| 2.1.9.3.2 Virtual Server Image Export Function.....                        | 65  |
| 2.1.9.3.3 Transferring Image Files.....                                    | 67  |
| 2.1.9.4 Procedure on the Migration Destination Customer's Environment..... | 68  |
| 2.1.9.4.1 Deploying Virtual Server Images.....                             | 68  |
| 2.2 Services for SAP.....                                                  | 70  |
| 2.2.1 Virtual Server for SAP.....                                          | 70  |
| 2.2.1.1 Virtual Server for SAP.....                                        | 70  |
| 2.2.1.2 Preparing the Virtual Server for SAP Environment.....              | 73  |
| 2.2.1.3 Creating/Deleting a Virtual Server for SAP.....                    | 75  |
| 2.2.1.4 Operations on a Virtual Server for SAP.....                        | 77  |
| 2.2.1.5 Managing Virtual Server for SAP Images.....                        | 81  |
| 2.2.2 Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP.....                                | 82  |
| 2.2.2.1 Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP.....                              | 82  |
| Part 3: Storage.....                                                       | 85  |
| 3.1 Block Storage.....                                                     | 86  |
| 3.1.1 System Storage.....                                                  | 86  |
| 3.1.2 Additional Storage.....                                              | 88  |
| 3.2 Snapshot.....                                                          | 89  |
| 3.2.1 Snapshot Function.....                                               | 89  |
| 3.3 Object Storage.....                                                    | 90  |
| 3.3.1 Object Storage.....                                                  | 90  |
| 3.3.2 Creating/Deleting a Container.....                                   | 90  |
| 3.3.3 Container Management.....                                            | 91  |
| 3.3.4 Access Policy Settings.....                                          | 91  |
| 3.3.5 Versioning.....                                                      | 92  |
| 3.3.6 Custom Metadata Management.....                                      | 92  |
| 3.3.7 Registering/Deleting an Object.....                                  | 93  |
| 3.3.8 Object Management.....                                               | 94  |
| 3.4 Network Attached Storage (NAS).....                                    | 96  |
| 3.4.1 NAS Software Image.....                                              | 96  |
| 3.4.2 How to Use NAS Software Image.....                                   | 96  |
| Part 4: Network.....                                                       | 101 |
| 4.1 Virtual Network.....                                                   | 102 |
| 4.1.1 Network Management.....                                              | 102 |
| 4.1.2 Subnet Management.....                                               | 102 |
| 4.1.3 Security Group Functions.....                                        | 103 |
| 4.1.4 Virtual Router Function.....                                         | 106 |

|                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 4.2 Port Addition Service.....                                      | 109 |
| 4.2.1 Port Management.....                                          | 109 |
| 4.3 Global IP Service.....                                          | 111 |
| 4.3.1 Global IP Address Service.....                                | 111 |
| 4.4 VPN (IPsec VPN).....                                            | 113 |
| 4.4.1 IPsec VPN Function.....                                       | 113 |
| 4.5 Firewall.....                                                   | 115 |
| 4.5.1 Firewall Service.....                                         | 115 |
| 4.6 DNS Service.....                                                | 118 |
| 4.6.1 DNS Service.....                                              | 118 |
| 4.6.2 DNS Zone Management Functions.....                            | 118 |
| 4.6.3 Record Management Functions.....                              | 120 |
| 4.6.4 Failover Function.....                                        | 123 |
| 4.6.5 Latency-Based Routing Function.....                           | 124 |
| 4.6.6 Weighted Round Robin Function.....                            | 125 |
| 4.7 Load Balancer.....                                              | 126 |
| 4.7.1 Load Balancer Service.....                                    | 126 |
| 4.7.2 Load Distribution Condition Settings.....                     | 127 |
| 4.7.3 Adding/Deleting a Target for Load Distribution.....           | 130 |
| 4.7.4 Multi-Availability Zone Distribution.....                     | 130 |
| 4.7.5 Monitoring for Abnormality on a Load Distribution Target..... | 131 |
| 4.8 Network Connector.....                                          | 133 |
| 4.8.1 Network Connector Service.....                                | 133 |
| Part 5: Database.....                                               | 137 |
| 5.1 Overview of Functions.....                                      | 138 |
| 5.1.1 Database as a Service.....                                    | 138 |
| 5.2 Building a Database.....                                        | 139 |
| 5.2.1 Creating a Virtual Database Server.....                       | 139 |
| 5.2.2 DB Subnet Groups.....                                         | 142 |
| 5.2.3 DB Parameter Groups.....                                      | 144 |
| 5.3 Managing a Database.....                                        | 147 |
| 5.3.1 Database Operations.....                                      | 147 |
| 5.3.2 Available Commands and SQL Statements.....                    | 150 |
| 5.3.3 Database User.....                                            | 155 |
| 5.3.4 Failover.....                                                 | 156 |
| 5.3.5 Database Recovery.....                                        | 156 |
| Part 6: Email Delivery Service.....                                 | 159 |
| 6.1 Overview of Functions.....                                      | 160 |
| 6.1.1 Email Delivery Service.....                                   | 160 |
| 6.2 Authentication.....                                             | 162 |
| 6.2.1 Authentication Functions.....                                 | 162 |

|                                                                       |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 6.3 Mail Delivery.....                                                | 163 |
| 6.3.1 Email Functions.....                                            | 163 |
| 6.3.2 Scheduling an Email to Be Delivered.....                        | 163 |
| 6.4 Email Certificate.....                                            | 164 |
| 6.4.1 Authentication Settings for Sender Policy Framework.....        | 164 |
| 6.5 Monitoring.....                                                   | 165 |
| 6.5.1 Monitoring the Status of Delivery.....                          | 165 |
| Part 7: Content Delivery Service.....                                 | 166 |
| 7.1 Overview of Functions.....                                        | 167 |
| 7.1.1 Content Delivery Service.....                                   | 167 |
| 7.2 Delivery Settings.....                                            | 173 |
| 7.2.1 Delivery Settings Function.....                                 | 173 |
| 7.2.2 Example Usage Scenarios and Caching Behavior Control Rules..... | 177 |
| 7.3 Reporting.....                                                    | 183 |
| 7.3.1 Report Functions.....                                           | 183 |
| Part 8: Template.....                                                 | 186 |
| 8.1 Orchestration.....                                                | 187 |
| 8.1.1 Orchestration Function.....                                     | 187 |
| 8.1.2 Building a Stack.....                                           | 188 |
| 8.1.3 Modifying/Deleting a Stack.....                                 | 190 |
| Part 9: Monitoring Service.....                                       | 191 |
| 9.1 Overview of Functions.....                                        | 192 |
| 9.1.1 Monitoring Service.....                                         | 192 |
| 9.2 Monitoring of Resources.....                                      | 194 |
| 9.2.1 Monitoring Resources.....                                       | 194 |
| 9.2.2 Monitoring with a Custom Meter.....                             | 194 |
| 9.3 Alarms.....                                                       | 196 |
| 9.3.1 Settings for Alarms.....                                        | 196 |
| Part 10: Security.....                                                | 198 |
| 10.1 IPS/IDS.....                                                     | 199 |
| 10.1.1 Trend Micro Deep Security as a Service Option.....             | 199 |
| Part 11: Management.....                                              | 201 |
| 11.1 Overview of Functions.....                                       | 202 |
| 11.1.1 Information to Know in Advance.....                            | 202 |
| 11.1.2 Procedure for Starting Operation.....                          | 203 |

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 11.2 Subscription Management.....                       | 205 |
| 11.2.1 Region Management.....                           | 205 |
| 11.3 User Management.....                               | 206 |
| 11.3.1 Overview of Functions.....                       | 206 |
| 11.3.1.1 Global User Management.....                    | 206 |
| 11.3.1.2 Regional User Management.....                  | 206 |
| 11.3.1.3 Preset Roles and Privileges.....               | 206 |
| 11.3.2 Global User Management.....                      | 207 |
| 11.3.2.1 Group Management.....                          | 207 |
| 11.3.2.1.1 Group Management.....                        | 207 |
| 11.3.3 Regional User Management.....                    | 210 |
| 11.3.3.1 Project Management.....                        | 210 |
| 11.3.3.1.1 Project Management.....                      | 210 |
| 11.3.3.2 Role Management.....                           | 212 |
| 11.3.3.2.1 Assigning a Role.....                        | 212 |
| 11.4 Key Management.....                                | 214 |
| 11.4.1 Key Management Function.....                     | 214 |
| Part 12: Private Connection.....                        | 216 |
| 12.1 Overview of Functions.....                         | 217 |
| 12.1.1 Private Connection Function.....                 | 217 |
| 12.1.2 Direct Port Connection Function.....             | 217 |
| Appendix A: Appendix.....                               | 218 |
| A.1 Limiting Values.....                                | 218 |
| A.2 Points to Note.....                                 | 229 |
| A.3 List of Software Support Service IDs.....           | 230 |
| A.4 Common Network Services.....                        | 231 |
| A.5 Domains That Can Be Registered in a Zone.....       | 234 |
| A.6 Predefined Security Policies.....                   | 236 |
| A.7 Lists of Monitored Items.....                       | 238 |
| A.8 Formula for Estimation.....                         | 240 |
| A.9 Setup of SQL Server.....                            | 241 |
| A.9.1 SQL Server 2014 Standard Edition Usage Guide..... | 241 |

---

# Part 1: Preface

---

## Topics:

- [Service Concept](#)
- [Location Services](#)

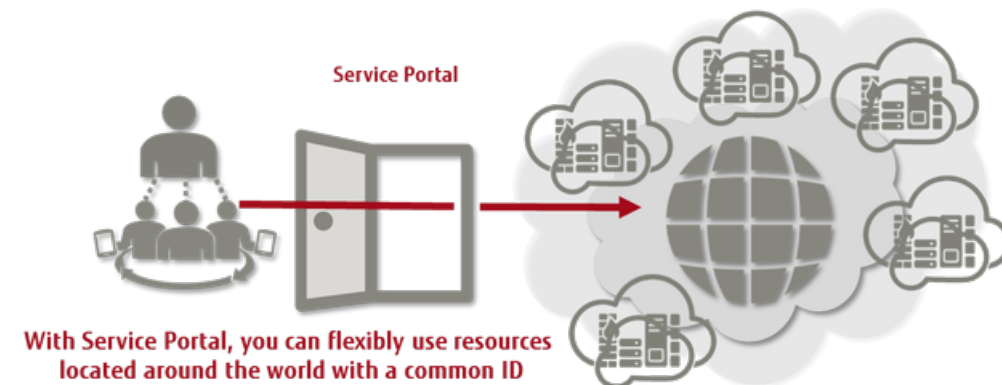
This chapter describes the concept of K5 IaaS services, the menu of available services, and the regions that are covered in relation to using the services.

# 1.1 Service Concept

## 1.1.1 Service Overview

K5 IaaS is a global cloud service provided by Fujitsu that allows for flexible on-demand use of virtual servers, storage systems, and other computing resources, with time-based pricing.

Figure 1: Global Cloud Service by Fujitsu



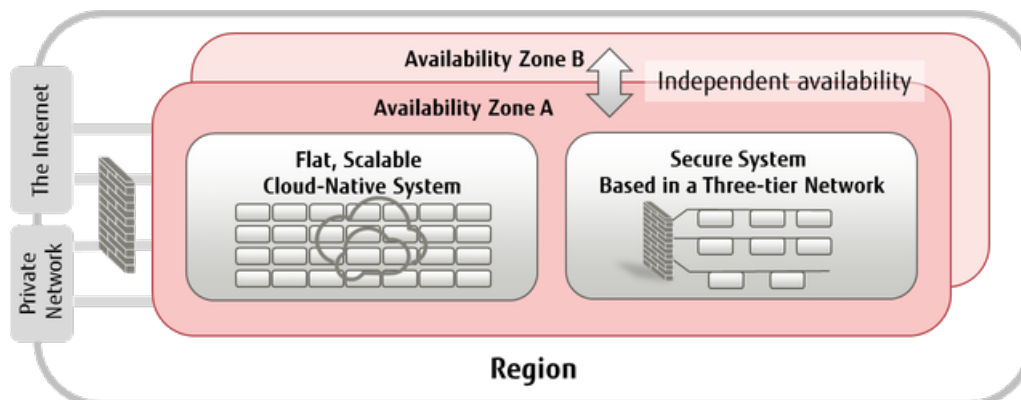
Tip

FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 IaaS is a service designed for cloud-native applications. Service Portal is complementary to the API and provides a subset of the main functions available with K5 IaaS. To use the full set of all functions, use the REST API.

## High Level of Security

- Both scalable environments connected via flat networks and secure environments divided into multiple network tiers are supported.
- Each region contains multiple availability zones (physically independent environments), ensuring high availability.
- The authentication and access control functions protect cloud resources.
- The network security service prevents attacks from the outside.

Figure 2: Providing Flexible Network Environment and Availability

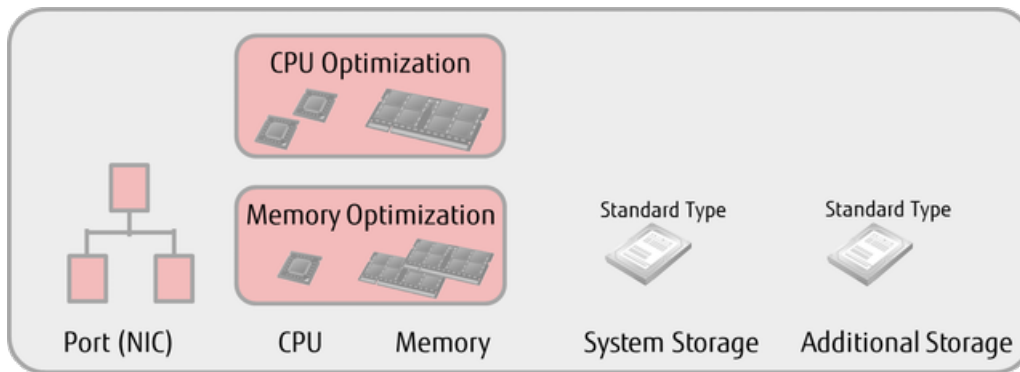


## Speed and Flexibility

- Combinations of vCPUs and memory capacity types are provided as virtual server types (flavors) to fit different use cases such as CPU optimization and memory optimization

- Flexible combinations of disk capacities and networks are provided
- Metered billing based on actual use time

Figure 3: Providing Flexible Combinations of Virtual Resources to Fit Different Use Cases



## Lower Operation Burden

- Auto-scaling linked with system monitoring, Database as a Service, and other functions lower system setup costs and operation costs
- Email functions, DNS, and other relevant services required for Internet services are provided

Figure 4: Providing Services and Functions that Reduce Operation Costs

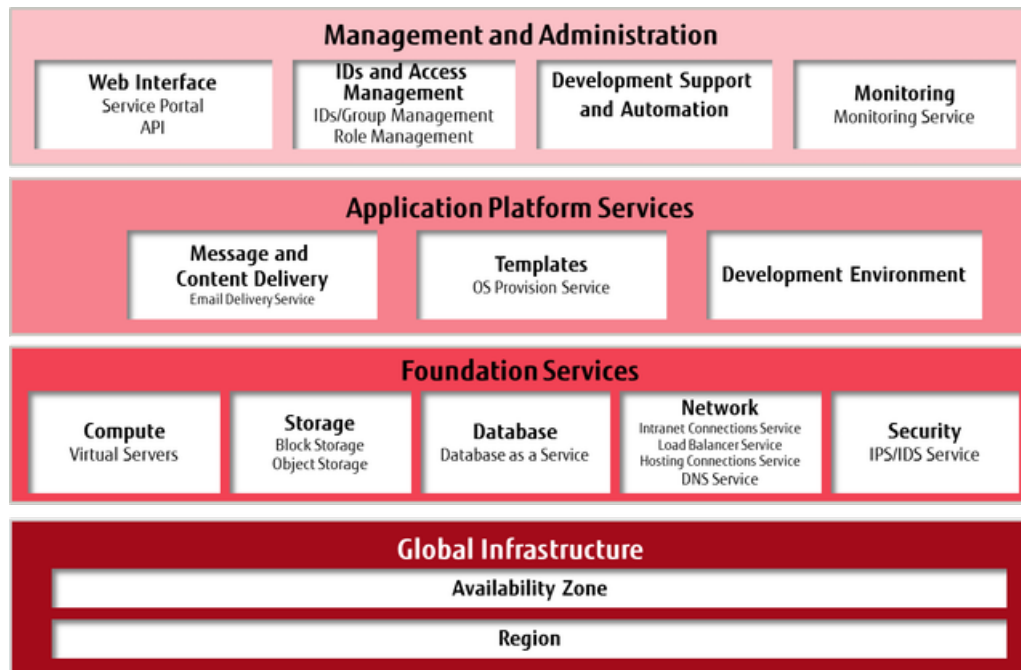


## 1.1.2 Overview of Services

This section provides an overview of the services available in K5 IaaS.

On each of the four layers in the figure below, K5 IaaS provides services specifically designed for your purposes and needs.

Figure 5: Structure of Services Available



## Global Infrastructure

Global Infrastructure makes K5 IaaS available at global locations. The following two location services are provided:

- **Region**  
Used to protect against regional disasters (disaster recovery purposes).
- **Tip**  
Overseas regions will be provided as they become available.
- **Availability Zone**  
Used to minimize the influence of failure at data center facilities.

## Foundation Services

Foundation Services provide a virtual infrastructure where you can run your applications and services. Foundation Services provide services that allow you to flexibly combine virtual servers, virtual storage, virtual networks, and other resources via an API or Service Portal to set up an execution environment quickly and as needed.

## Application Platform Services

Application Platform Services provide services that support the configuration of large-scale systems, such as services for coordination between your applications and services developed on the base of Foundation Services, or for automatic creation and deployment of built systems.

## Management & Administration

The Management & Administration services provide support for continuous operation of your applications and services on Foundation Services.

## 1.2 Location Services

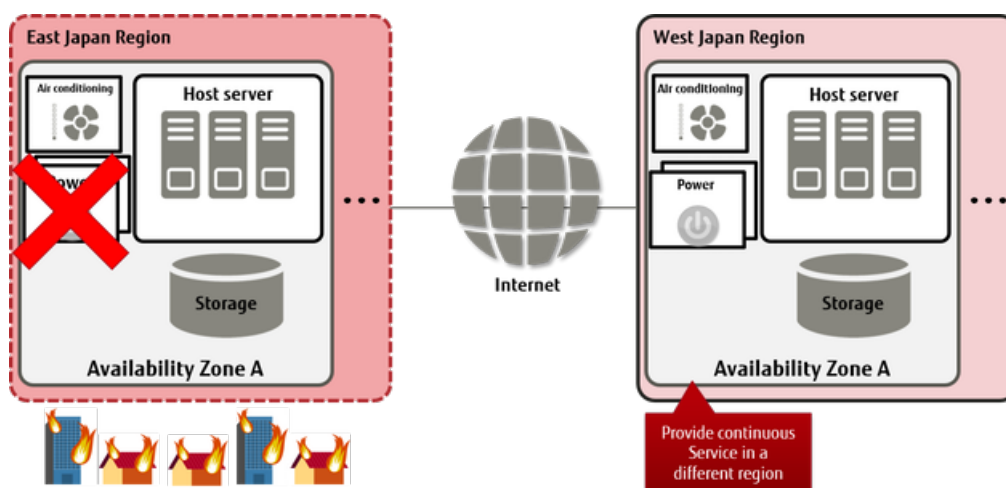
### 1.2.1 Region

This function provides an environment where multiple regions can be used with a single K5 IaaS account. Such an environment can be used to develop large-scale services or as a measure against disaster.

Regions are geographical areas of Japan or other countries that are separated, such as would be created by splitting along a north-south or east-west divide. Regions are connected via the Internet to form a Wide Area Network.

For protection against disasters that occur in regions where the system is running, you can use multiple regions to prepare a backup system for service continuity and achieve high availability for your business system.

Figure 6: Example of Using Multiple Regions



### Available Regions

The following regions are provided.

Table 1: List of Available Regions

| Country | Name of Region         | Region Identifier |
|---------|------------------------|-------------------|
| Japan   | Eastern Japan Region 1 | jp-east-1         |
|         | Western Japan Region 1 | jp-west-1         |
|         | Western Japan Region 2 | jp-west-2         |
| England | UK Region 1            | uk-1              |

### K5 IaaS Service Configurations

- Global Services

Global services have a single API endpoint as K5 IaaS, and provide resources and services that are not dependent on region. They are used by acquiring global tokens.

- Regional Services

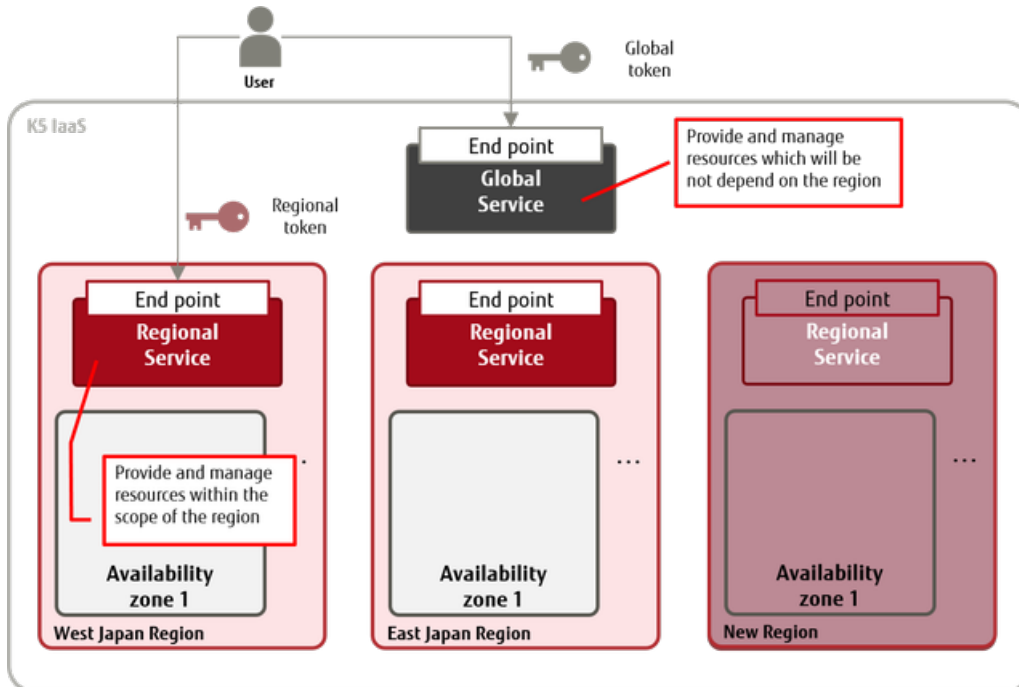
Regional services have a single API endpoint for each region, and provide resources and services within the region. They are used by acquiring regional tokens.



For details, refer to the following manuals:

- Tip
- Explanations of services in *K5 IaaS Service Specification*
  - *K5 IaaS API Reference Manual*

Figure 7: Concept of Global Services and Regional Services



## Functions Included

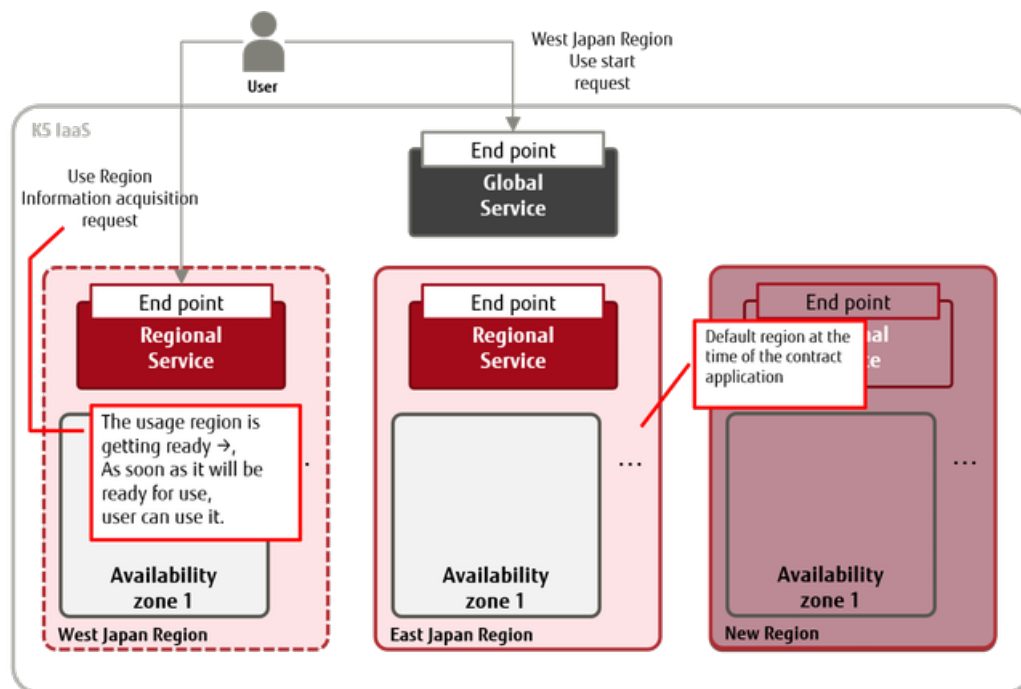
- Region Activation Function

This function is used to add a new region to the regions that are currently being used.



When a contract number (domain) is acquired, "Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)" can be used as the default region.

Figure 8: How to Use a Different Region



- Function for Acquiring Information about Regions Currently in Use  
You can acquire a list of regions that are currently in use, as well as their availability ("active" or "ready").
- Authentication Functions

- Global Authentication Function

The global token acquisition function is provided to allow the use of global services.



Use the global user management service to acquire tokens.

Tip

- Regional Authentication Function

The regional token acquisition function is provided to allow the use of regional services.



Use the regional user management service to acquire tokens.

Tip

Table 2: List of Global Services

| Name of Service         | Endpoint                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Subscription Management | <a href="https://contract.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://contract.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |
| Global User Management  | <a href="https://identity.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://identity.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |
| Billing Management      | <a href="https://billing.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://billing.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>   |
| DNS Service             | <a href="https://dns.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://dns.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>           |
| Product Management      | <a href="https://catalog.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://catalog.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>   |

| Name of Service          | Endpoint                                                                                        |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Content Delivery Service | <a href="https://cdn.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://cdn.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |

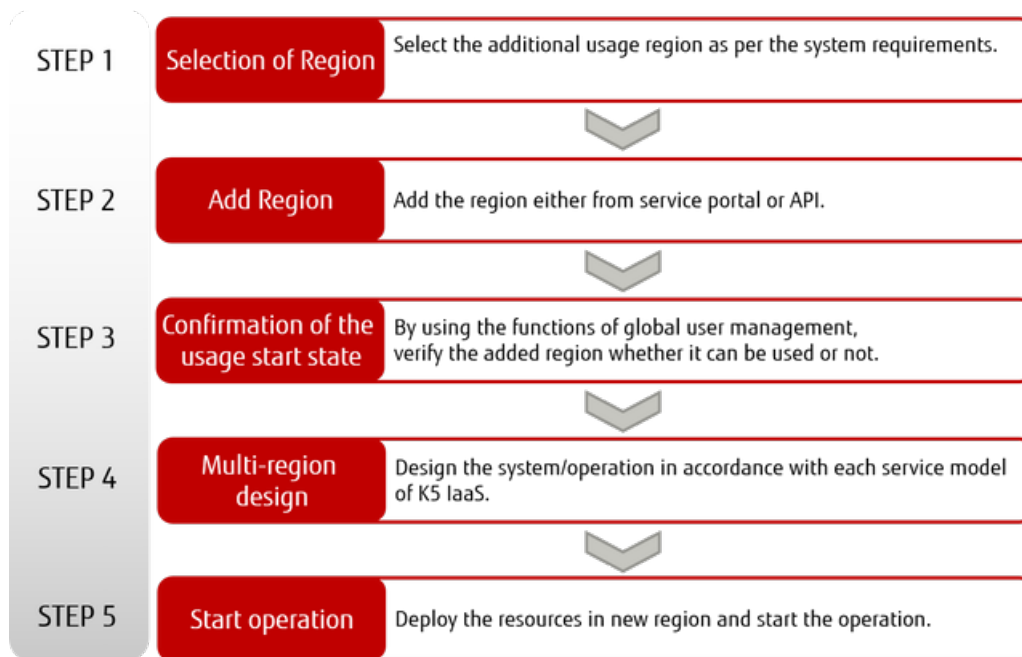
Table 3: List of Regional Services

| Name of Service            | Endpoint (** indicates the region identifier)                                                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Regional User Management   | <a href="https://identity.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://identity.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>           |
| Key Management             | <a href="https://keymanagement.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://keymanagement.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |
| Software Management        | <a href="https://software.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://software.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>           |
| Compute (Standard Service) | <a href="https://compute.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://compute.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>             |
| Image Management           | <a href="https://image.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://image.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>                 |
| Virtual Server Import      | <a href="https://vmimport.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://vmimport.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>           |
| Compute (Service for SAP)  | <a href="https://compute-w.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://compute-w.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>         |
| Auto-Scaling               | <a href="https://autoscale.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://autoscale.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>         |
| Block Storage              | <a href="https://blockstorage.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://blockstorage.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>   |
| Object Storage             | <a href="https://objectstorage.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://objectstorage.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |
| Virtual Network            | <a href="https://networking.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://networking.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>       |
| Virtual Network Extension  | <a href="https://networking-ex.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://networking-ex.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |
| Load Balancer              | <a href="https://loadbalancing.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://loadbalancing.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |
| Database                   | <a href="https://database.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://database.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>           |
| Mail Delivery              | <a href="https://mail.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://mail.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>                   |
| Orchestration              | <a href="https://orchestration.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://orchestration.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a> |
| Monitoring                 | <a href="https://telemetry.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com">https://telemetry.**.cloud.global.fujitsu.com</a>         |

## How to Use This Service

---

Figure 9: How to Start Using Multiple Regions



## Points to Note

---

- Common
  - Once you have started using a region, you cannot stop using that region.
  - Global tokens and regional tokens that are acquired with the authentication function cannot be used interchangeably. Use tokens correctly according to the services and resources that you want to use.
    - Use of regional services with global tokens
    - Use of global services with regional tokens
- Global Services
  - Global User Management Service
    - If you use the global user management service to create or change resources, there will be a time lag until all regions are synchronized.

 **Tip** You can use the "Check Synchronization between Regions" function provided by the global user management service to check if synchronization is complete in the region you want to use.
- DNS Service
  -  **Important** The following operations are required to use a DNS service.
    - Create a project in "Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)," and register in that project the user who will use the DNS service.
    - Use a regional token.
- FQDN Compatibility with Old Endpoints

Access to a global service endpoint that was used before the multi-region function was released is transferred to a new endpoint as shown below.

**Table 4: List of FQDN Compatibility for Service Endpoints Before and After the Multi-Region Function was Released**

| Name of Service         | Old Endpoint                           | New Endpoint                                     |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Subscription Management | contract.cloud.global.fujitsu.com      | contract.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com            |
| User Management         | identity.cloud.global.fujitsu.com      | identity.jp-east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com      |
| Key Management          | keymanagement.cloud.global.fujitsu.com | keymanagement.jp-east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |
| Billing Management      | billing.cloud.global.fujitsu.com       | billing.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com             |
| Product Management      | catalog.cloud.global.fujitsu.com       | catalog.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com             |
| DNS Service             | dns.cloud.global.fujitsu.com           | dns.gls.cloud.global.fujitsu.com                 |

- Regional Services
  - Email Delivery Service



Only "Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)" is provided.

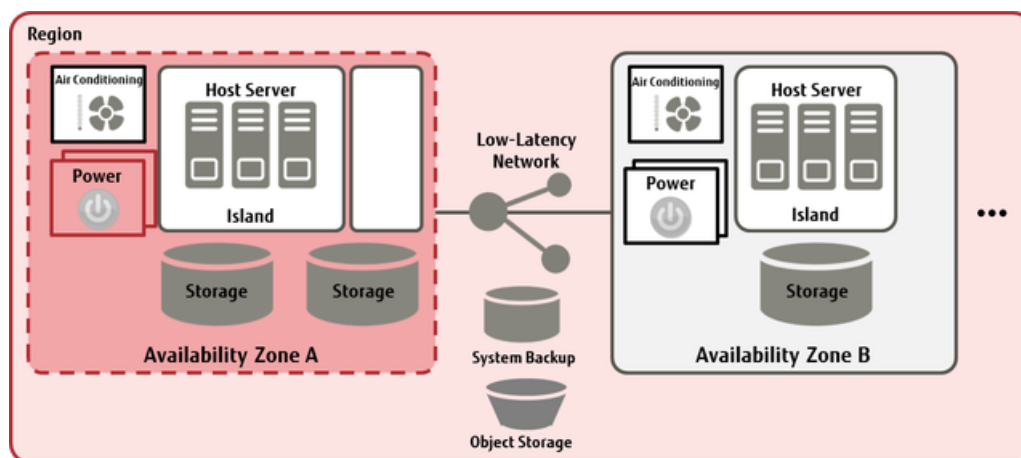
Note

## 1.2.2 Availability Zone

An availability zone is a unit for sharing physical facilities, such as data center facilities and service provision facilities. Multiple availability zones are provided in each region.

Availability zones are connected via low-latency networks. Distributing your business system over multiple availability zones ensures high availability for your business system.

**Figure 10: Example of Using Availability Zones**



---

# Part 2: Compute

---

Topics:

- [\*Standard Services\*](#)
- [\*Services for SAP\*](#)

With physical computers separated by virtualization technology, K5 IaaS provides a virtual infrastructure that is accessible via the Internet.

## 2.1 Standard Services

---

### 2.1.1 Virtual Server

---

#### 2.1.1.1 Creating/Deleting a Virtual Server

---

You can select the virtual server you want to create from several types, according to the purpose (such as to serve as a web server or as an application server). You can also delete servers that are in use at any time if they are no longer needed.

#### Creating a Virtual Server

---

You can create a virtual server from one of the image types explained below.

- Standard  
Image prepared by using the [OS Provision Service](#) on page 24 or [Software Provision Service](#) on page 28
- Created by the user  
Image prepared through [management of the virtual server image](#)
- Imported by the user  
Image prepared by using the [virtual server import service](#)

When you create a virtual server, specify the following:

- Region and availability zones for the virtual server
- [Virtual Server Type \(Flavor\)](#) on page 13
- System block storage type and OS
- Port and the subnet of the connection destination
- Security group
- Key pair for login to the virtual server
- [Provisioning script](#)
- Automatic Failover



Important

In order to use the functions available when you create a virtual server, a virtual router must be connected to the network to which the virtual server connects.

#### Administrator Password for a Virtual Server

---

- For Windows

When you create the virtual server, specify the key pair name that you have created as a parameter. Use key file (\*.pem) of the specified key pair to acquire the random Administrator password that is issued by the system.

Example: How to decrypt the random password that was issued

```
$ COMPUTE=endpoint of virtual server API
$ OS_AUTH_TOKEN=token string acquired
$ SERVER_ID=ID of created Windows virtual server
$ PROJECT_ID=project ID of created Windows virtual server
$ curl -s $COMPUTE/v2/$PROJECT_ID/servers/$SERVER_ID/os-server-password -
X GET -H "X-Auth-Token: $OS_AUTH_TOKEN" | jq .
{
  "password": "password string"
}
$ PASSWORD=password string acquired by above command
```

```
$ echo $PASSWORD | openssl base64 -d -A | openssl rsautl -decrypt -inkey  
key file(.pem)
```



Note

After you have created the virtual server, confirm that it is in an ACTIVE state, and then acquire the password string.

## Deleting a Virtual Server

If you no longer need a certain virtual server, you can delete it at any time.



Note

You can delete a virtual server even while it is running. Therefore, extra caution must be exercised when you delete one.



Tip

- When you create a virtual server, specify whether to retain the system storage of the server upon deletion.
- If you specify to retain the system storage, we recommend that you stop the server in advance in order to avoid damage to the data in the system storage.

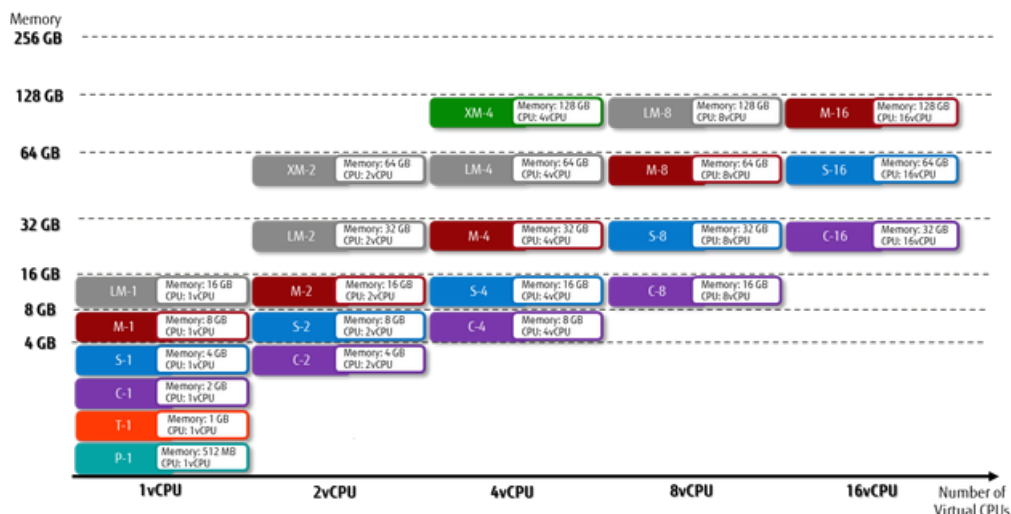
## Virtual Server Type (Flavor)

The types (flavors) of virtual servers that are provided are as follows:

Table 5: List of Provided Virtual Server Types (Flavors)

| Type Name | Number of Virtual CPUs | Memory (GB) |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| P-1       | 1                      | 0.5         |
| T-1       | 1                      | 1           |
| C-1       | 1                      | 2           |
| C-2       | 2                      | 4           |
| C-4       | 4                      | 8           |
| C-8       | 8                      | 16          |
| C-16      | 16                     | 32          |
| S-1       | 1                      | 4           |
| S-2       | 2                      | 8           |
| S-4       | 4                      | 16          |
| S-8       | 8                      | 32          |
| S-16      | 16                     | 64          |
| M-1       | 1                      | 8           |
| M-2       | 2                      | 16          |
| M-4       | 4                      | 32          |
| M-8       | 8                      | 64          |
| M-16      | 16                     | 128         |
| XM-4      | 4                      | 128         |

Figure 11: List of Virtual Server Types



## Automatic Failover

If the server stops during an operation due to issues such as failure of the physical host machine at the data center, you can automatically move the virtual server that was operating on that host machine to a different host machine and operate the server there. When you create a virtual server, specify whether to enable an automatic failover.



Important

You cannot select virtual machines for which you enabled an automatic failover as targets of auto-scaling.

### 2.1.1.2 Provisioning Script Function

This function carries out the initial processing such as exchange of data and automatic processing by script when the virtual server is created.

The provisioning script function relays the required information when the virtual server is created through the following multiple methods:

- Metadata
- User data

## Metadata Settings

Associate the virtual server with data in the Key/Value format to configure the settings. In addition to the data that is automatically set when the server is created, you can configure other settings that you need. For example, information for recognizing a collection of servers as one system, such as `VSYS_NAME=e-learning`.

## User Data Settings

The user data function transfers data in text format to the virtual server. You can set a script to be executed when the virtual server is started.

- For CentOS  
Describe the script using sh or bash.
- For Red Hat Enterprise Linux  
Describe the script using sh or bash.
- For Windows  
Describe the script using PowerShell or Windows Batch.



Note

The script is executed by the software function below that is appropriate for the OS. For details, refer to the support site of the software involved.

Table 6: Software That Provides the Script Function by OS Type

| OS Type                  | Software That Provides the Script Function |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| CentOS                   | Cloud-init                                 |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux | Cloud-init                                 |
| Windows                  | Cloudbase-init                             |

### 2.1.1.3 Scaling Up and Scaling Down of a Virtual Server

You can change the type of a virtual server that has been created, as necessary.

If, due to the operational conditions of the virtual server, the performance of the virtual server type that you selected when you created it is insufficient or is excessive, you can change the specifications of that virtual server.



Tip

If the specifications of the virtual server are more than enough to satisfy the requirements of the application operation load, you can reduce operation costs by scaling down.

### Resizing of a Virtual Server

You can change the *Virtual Server Type* of a virtual server that has been created to a different type.

- For Operation from the Service Portal

Make sure that the virtual server to be resized is in an operating state (ACTIVE) and that all the applications have stopped, and then resize the virtual server.



Tip

After you resize the virtual server and the status changes to "VERIFY\_RESIZE," select [Verify Resize/Migration] from the [Action] menu.

The virtual server is stopped forcibly during the resizing processing and starts up automatically after resizing is completed.

- For Operation from the API

Make sure that the virtual server to be resized is in a shut-down state (SHUTOFF), and then resize the virtual server.

The virtual server does not start up automatically after resizing is completed. Start the virtual server manually.

### Rollback of Virtual Server Resizing

You can roll back the resizing of the virtual server in some situations; for example, if the target virtual server does not properly enter an "ACTIVE" state after it has been resized.

### 2.1.1.4 Operations on a Virtual Server

You can carry out the following operations on a virtual server that has been created in the system.

### Startup/Termination of a Virtual Server

Start the created virtual server from a shut-down state (SHUTOFF). Or, shut down the server from an operating state (ACTIVE).



Important

A virtual server that is shut down from the OS or terminated from the service portal/API will be subject to usage charges. After termination, servers that are used infrequently can be released in order to reduce costs.



Note

A virtual server that is terminated from the service portal/API will be stopped forcibly, which is equivalent to a forced power shutdown. To shut down a virtual server normally, log in to the virtual server and carry out a shutdown operation.

## Release/Restoration of a Virtual Server

In order to release the CPU and memory resources in use by the virtual server, release the virtual server. Virtual servers that have been released will enter a released state (SHELVED\_OFFLOADED).



Tip

You can release a virtual server, regardless of whether it is in a running state or in a terminated state.



Note

You cannot carry out the following operations on a virtual server that has been released:

- Connection/disconnection of port
- Attachment/detachment of a block storage
- Changing of virtual server type
- Re-creation of virtual server
- Startup/termination of virtual server

In order to return a released server to a state in which it can be used normally, restore the virtual server.



Important

When you restore a virtual server, it is restored to an operating (ACTIVE) state. Be aware that charges are applied for services such as the OS provision service and the software provision service.

## Rebooting a Virtual Server

- Soft reboot (equivalent to the OS reboot command)
- Hard reboot (equivalent to the reset button)

## Changing Virtual Server Settings

You can change the existing settings of a virtual server. You can make the following changes:

- Change of the virtual server name
- Change of the IP address



Note

You can change the IPV4 address only.

## Attachment/Detachment of a Block Storage

Specify the device name of the existing block storage (example: /dev/vdb) and attach it. You can also detach a block storage that is no longer needed.

## Port Connection/Disconnection

Ports can be added or removed on the virtual server.

## 2.1.1.5 Server Group Function

You can register multiple virtual servers together as one server group, and specify how the server group behaves as a policy.

Specify the behavior of the server group as an entity by specifying how the collection of servers is run on the physical host.

- Affinity

The virtual servers that are registered in the server group for which the Affinity policy is specified are started on the same physical host when possible.

This helps communication between virtual servers within the same server group become faster compared to when Anti-Affinity is specified.

- Anti-Affinity

The virtual servers registered in the server group for which the Anti-Affinity policy is specified are started on different physical hosts when possible.

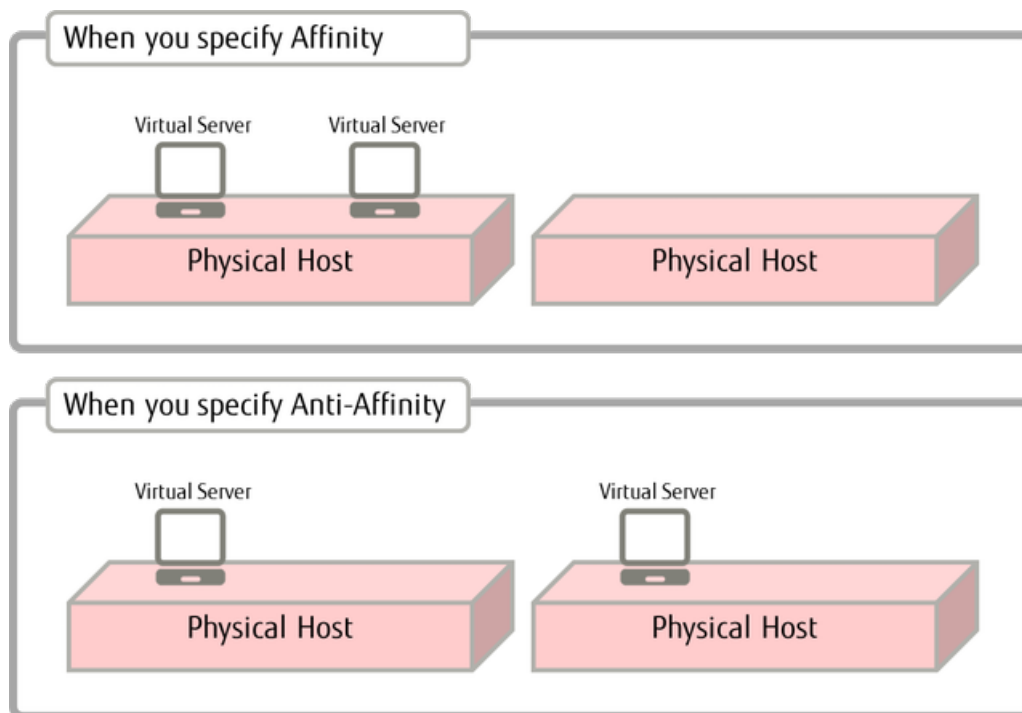
In this case, even if some physical hosts go down, virtual servers running on the other physical hosts are not affected. Therefore, in a scale out configuration, your business system keeps on running.



Specify the server group when you create the virtual server.

Tip

Figure 12: Operation of the Server Group Function



Note

Operation of the server group function is not guaranteed. Depending on the usage of K5 IaaS, you may experience the following:

- Even when you specify Affinity, some virtual servers may start on different physical hosts.
- Even when you specify Anti-Affinity, some virtual servers may start on the same physical host.

## 2.1.1.6 Logging in to a Virtual Server

---

This section explains how to log in through the network while the virtual server is in operation. The method of logging in to the virtual server depends on the OS image that is in use.

### Logging in to CentOS Virtual Server

---

To log in to a CentOS virtual server via SSH, use the registered key pair that you used when you created the virtual server.



The user ID for the Administrator is "k5user."

Tip

### Logging in to Red Hat Enterprise Linux Virtual Server

---

To log in to a Red Hat Enterprise Linux virtual server via SSH, use the registered key pair that you used when you created the virtual server.



The user ID for the Administrator is "k5user."

Tip

### Logging in to Ubuntu Virtual Server

---

To log in to an Ubuntu virtual server via SSH, use the registered key pair that you used when you created the virtual server.



The user ID for the Administrator is "ubuntu."

Tip

### Logging in to Windows Virtual Server

---

To log in to a Windows virtual server, use a remote desktop connection. Specify the private IP address of the target virtual server, and connect to the virtual server from the client PC.



Tip

The user ID for the Administrator is "k5user," and the password is the password you obtained in [Administrator Password for a Virtual Server](#) on page 12 when you created the virtual server.



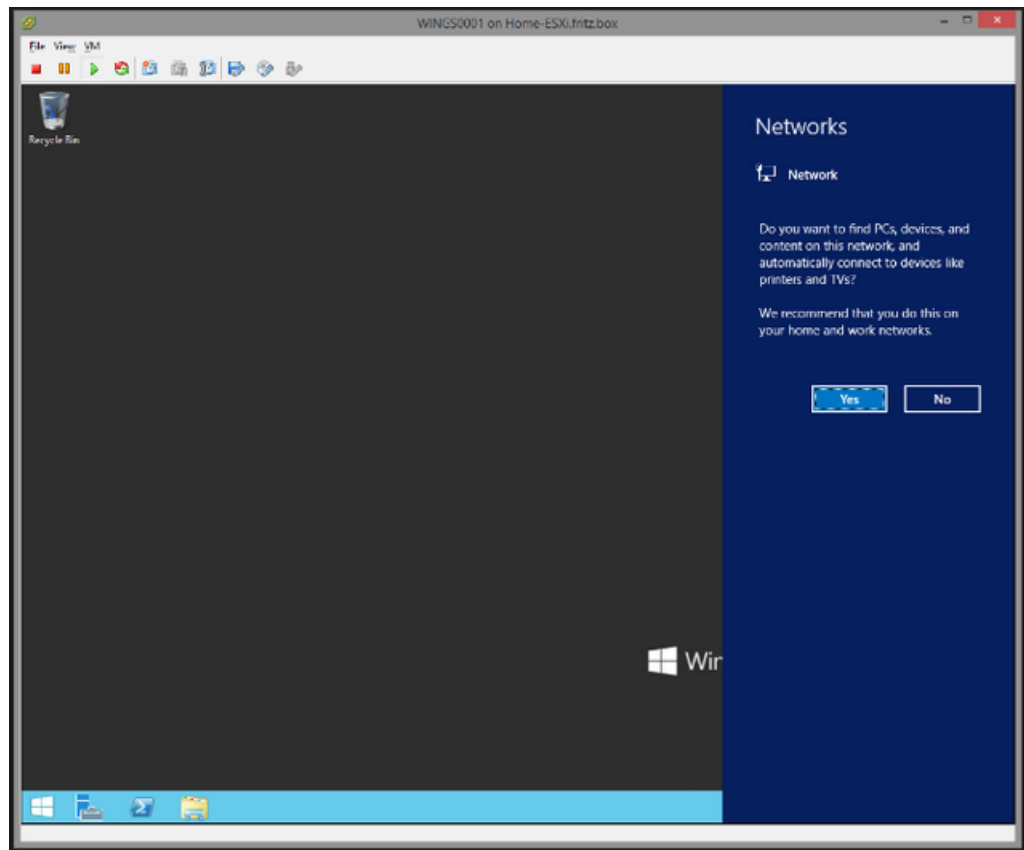
Important

When you log in to Windows 2012 R2 for the first time, the inquiry message shown below appears on the right side of the screen. Be sure to select [Yes]. If you select [No], a remote desktop connection may not be possible.

Do you want to find PCs, devices, and content on this network, and automatically connect to devices like printers and TVs?

We recommend that you do this on your home network and work network.

Figure 13: Inquiry Message at Initial Login to Windows 2012 R2



### 2.1.1.7 Key Pair Management Function

You can create and register a key pair for logging in to the virtual server via SSH. You can also import a key pair that was created externally.

When you register the key pair by following the procedure below, you can acquire the key file for SSH authentication (\*.pem). You can use the key file for SSH authentication (\*.pem) to easily log in to a virtual server.

1. When you create the virtual server, specify the key pair that you have registered, and obtain the key file (\*.pem).
2. On the SSH client software side, set the acquired key file (\*.pem).
3. Log in to the virtual server via SSH connection.



Important

Exercise appropriate caution when you manage the key file.

### Creating and Importing a Key Pair

Specify the key pair name and create the key pair. You can also specify a public key that was created with ssh-keygen or other tools to register the key pair.



We recommend you create a key with a passphrase if you use an external tool to create the key pair.

Note

Table 7: List of Key Pair Settings

| Item              | Description                                                          | Required |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Key Pair Name     | Specify the name of the key pair.                                    |          |
| Public Key String | Specify the public key string that you created with an external tool |          |

The information entered for the Public Key String is the information of `img_rsa.pub`, which is created in "Example of Creation of Key Pair with Passphrase"

## Example of Creating a Key Pair with a Passphrase

Below is an example of using `ssh-keygen` to create a key pair with a passphrase.

```
$ ssh-keygen -t rsa
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/home/user1/.ssh/id_rsa): /tmp/img_rsa
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase): Enter passphrase
Enter same passphrase again: Enter passphrase
Your identification has been saved in /tmp/img_rsa.
Your public key has been saved in /tmp/img_rsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
6e:d0:(omitted):c0:8b user1@LinuxImgDev
The key's randomart image is:
(omitted)
```

## Deleting a Registered Key Pair

You can delete key pairs that are no longer needed.

### 2.1.1.8 Checking Console Log

A function that allows you to check the console output is provided, for the purpose of investigating trouble that occurs when you start the virtual server and such.



Tip

By specifying the number of lines of the log, you can acquire the specified number of lines of console log content, from the newest line to the older lines.



Note

When a virtual server is released, the content of the console log up until that time is deleted and you can no longer view the content. In addition, you cannot view the console log in a released state (SHELVED\_OFFLOADED).

## 2.1.2 Dedicated Virtual Server

### 2.1.2.1 Dedicated Virtual Server

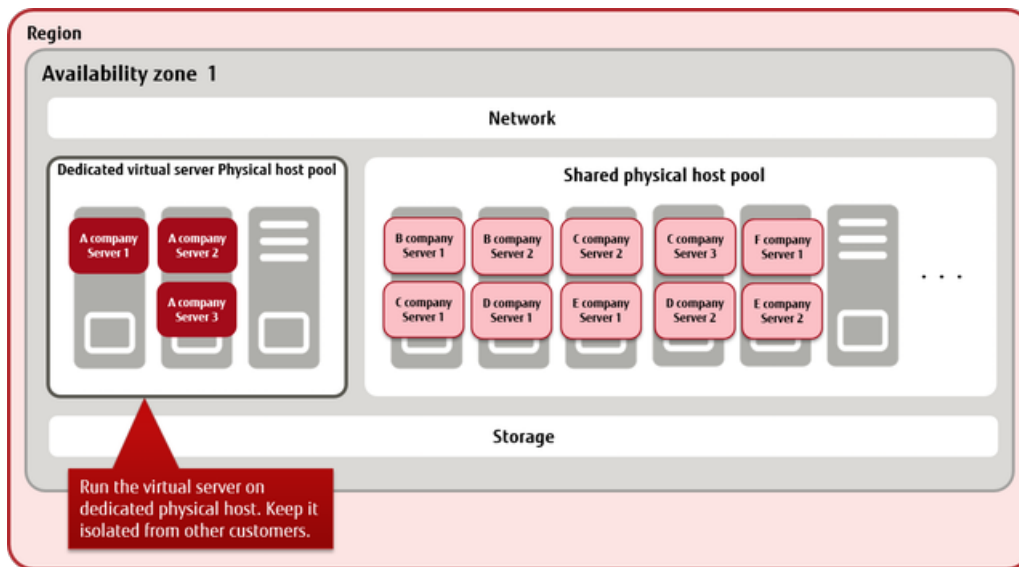
A pool for dedicated physical hosts is secured for each contract number (domain), and a function that creates a dedicated virtual server is provided.

Virtual servers for another customer will not be created on the physical host that you have secured. Therefore, this server can be used for environments that must be separate from other customers (single tenant) for reasons such as compliance and license management.



Important

The storage and networks are shared. They cannot be dedicated to a single customer.



## Available Server Types for Dedicated Virtual Servers

The types of virtual servers that are available as dedicated virtual servers are the same as normal virtual servers.

Table 8: List of Provided Virtual Server Types (Flavors)

| Type Name | Number of Virtual CPUs | Memory (GB) |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| P-1       | 1                      | 0.5         |
| T-1       | 1                      | 1           |
| C-1       | 1                      | 2           |
| C-2       | 2                      | 4           |
| C-4       | 4                      | 8           |
| C-8       | 8                      | 16          |
| C-16      | 16                     | 32          |
| S-1       | 1                      | 4           |
| S-2       | 2                      | 8           |
| S-4       | 4                      | 16          |
| S-8       | 8                      | 32          |
| S-16      | 16                     | 64          |
| M-1       | 1                      | 8           |
| M-2       | 2                      | 16          |
| M-4       | 4                      | 32          |
| M-8       | 8                      | 64          |
| M-16      | 16                     | 128         |
| XM-4      | 4                      | 128         |

## Physical Host Pool Menu

- Basic Set: "2 server configuration"

A physical host pool that includes a failover host is secured as the creation destination for the virtual server that is dedicated to the customer. You must apply for one Basic Set for each availability zone in which you will run a dedicated virtual server.

- Additional Servers

Use additional servers when you want to increase the capacity of available dedicated virtual servers, such as when there is increased demand on the system. Physical hosts are added to the same pool where the Basic Set is currently used.



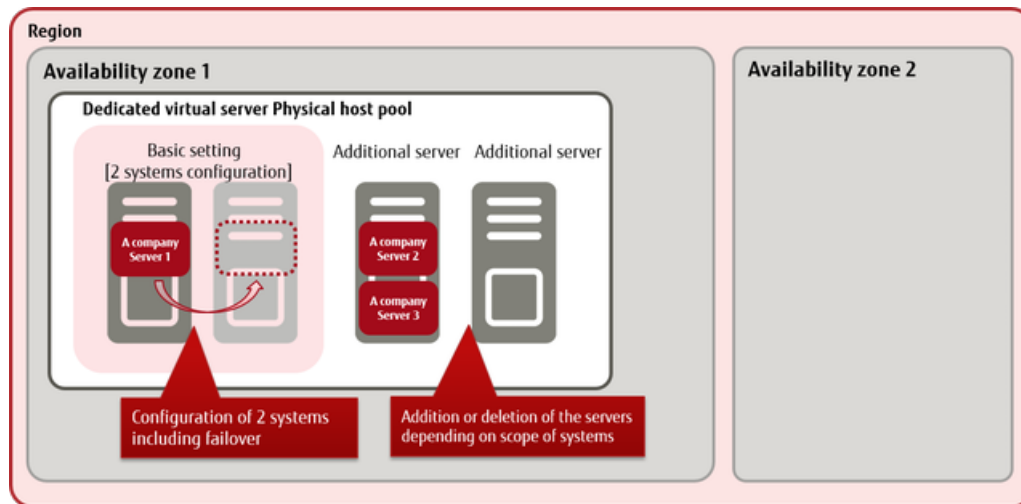
Tip

The following amounts of resources can be used by each physical host.

|                        |        |
|------------------------|--------|
| Number of Virtual CPUs | 40     |
| Memory                 | 250 GB |

Confirm the type of dedicated virtual server, and then estimate the number of dedicated virtual servers that can be created.

Figure 14: Using the Physical Host Pool Menu



## Functions Included

When you create a virtual server, you have the option of creating it in a physical host pool that you have secured. Dedicated virtual servers that you create are managed by project, in the same way as a normal virtual server.



Note

- You cannot specify a specific physical host in a physical host pool to create a virtual server.
- The physical host pool for a single contract number is shared between all projects.

Dedicated virtual servers that you have created have the same Compute function as normal virtual servers.

- Compute
  - Dedicated Virtual Server
    - Creating/Deleting a Dedicated Virtual Server
    - Provisioning Script Function
    - Scaling Up and Scaling Down of a Dedicated Virtual Server
    - Startup/Termination of a Dedicated Virtual Server
    - Release/Restoration of a Dedicated Virtual Server

- Restarting a Dedicated Virtual Server
- Server Group Function



You cannot use the Anti-Affinity policy.

Note

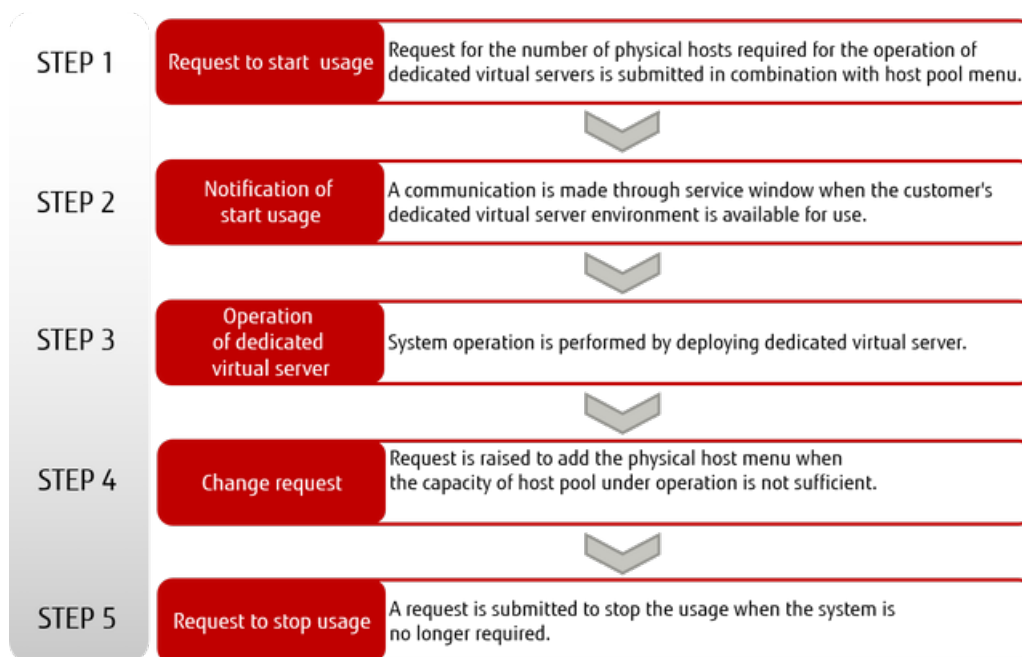
- Attachment/Detachment of a Block Storage
- Port Connection/Disconnection
- Key Pair Management Function
- Checking Console Log
- OS Provision Service
- Software Support Service
- Auto-Scaling
- Image
- Virtual Server Import Service

For shared storage and networks, you can use the same functions as a normal virtual server.

- Storage
- Network

## How to Use This Service

Figure 15: Procedure from Starting to Stopping a Dedicated Virtual Server



## Points to Note

- A contract number (domain) can have only one physical host pool where dedicated virtual servers are created.
- Although the physical host is a dedicated machine, it is unlikely to improve the performance of any dedicated virtual servers that are created.
- Although the physical host is separate from other users, security is not guaranteed because the network is shared. Use security groups and the firewall function to ensure security in the same way as you would with a normal virtual server.

## 2.1.3 OS Provision Service

### 2.1.3.1 OS Provision Service

The service provides an OS for the virtual server. We plan to continually expand the OS types, editions, and versions provided by K5 IaaS.

#### OS Provision Service

The service provides the following lineup of OSs for the virtual server. When you create the virtual server, select the OS image that you will use.

Table 9: OS Environment Provided

| OS Type | OS Provided                                          | Available Regions               |    |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----|
|         |                                                      | Eastern Japan,<br>Western Japan | UK |
| Windows | Windows Server 2008 R2 SE SP1 64bit Japanese version | ✓                               |    |
|         | Windows Server 2008 R2 EE SP1 64bit Japanese version | ✓                               |    |
|         | Windows Server 2012 R2 SE 64bit Japanese Version     | ✓                               |    |
|         | Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit Japanese Version        | ✓                               |    |
|         | Windows Server 2008 R2 SE SP1 64bit English Version  |                                 | ✓  |
|         | Windows Server 2012 R2 SE 64bit English Version      |                                 | ✓  |
| Linux   | CentOS 6.5 64bit (English)                           | ✓                               | ✓  |
|         | CentOS 7.2 64bit (English)                           | ✓                               | ✓  |
|         | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5 64bit (English)         | ✓                               | ✓  |
|         | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2 64bit (English)         | ✓                               | ✓  |
|         | Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (English)                    | ✓                               | ✓  |



Note

For OSs to which the password policies below apply, specify a password string that satisfies the relevant policies. Otherwise, even if you set up a password successfully, you will not be able to log in to the OS with that password.

- Windows Server passwords must meet the following complexity requirements:
  - At least six characters
  - Use at least one character from three or more of the following four categories:
    1. Uppercase alphabetic characters (A - Z)
    2. Lowercase alphabetic characters (a - z)
    3. Decimal numbers (0 - 9)
    4. Characters other than alphabetic characters (such as ! , \$ , # , %)

## DNS Server Settings of the OS

To resolve Internet names from the OS, refer to [Common Network Services](#) on page 231. Set the name server information that corresponds to the region and availability zone in which the virtual server exists.

## Combinations of Virtual Server Type and OS That Cannot Be Used

The following combinations of virtual server type and OS cannot be used because they do not meet the operating requirements of the OS.

Table 10: List of Combinations of Virtual Server Types and OS That Are Inoperable

| OS type | OS Provided                                          | Inoperable virtual server type |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Windows | Windows Server 2008 R2 SE SP1 64bit Japanese version | P-1                            |
|         | Windows Server 2008 R2 EE SP1 64bit Japanese version | P-1                            |
|         | Windows Server 2012 R2 SE 64bit Japanese Version     | P-1                            |
|         | Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit Japanese Version        | P-1                            |
|         | Windows Server 2008 R2 SE SP1 64bit English Version  | P-1                            |
|         | Windows Server 2012 R2 SE 64bit English Version      | P-1                            |
| Linux   | CentOS 6.5 64bit (English)                           | P-1                            |
|         | CentOS 7.2 64bit (English)                           | P-1                            |
|         | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5 64bit (English)         | P-1                            |
|         | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2 64bit (English)         | P-1                            |
|         | Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (English)                    | None                           |

### 2.1.3.2 OS Patch/Update Settings

This section describes the settings required to apply patches and updates to the virtual server to be created.



Note

Configure in advance the following network settings to connect to the repository where the virtual server provides patch files and updates:

- Connection to external networks
- Firewall
- Security group settings

## Settings for Activation Using Key Management Service (KMS)

For details on Windows Server activation using KMS, contact the service provider for assistance.

## Settings for Windows Server Update Services

For details on the WSUS settings for Windows Server, contact the service provider for assistance.

## Red Hat Update Infrastructure Settings

When you use Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the following settings are required in order to use RHUI:

1. Transfer RHUI Agent to virtual server

Table 11: List of RHUI Agent Modules by Version

| Version                      | Name of Module Transferred         |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x | rhui-entitlement6-2.0-1.noarch.rpm |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x | rhui-entitlement7-2.0-2.noarch.rpm |

2. Install RHUI Agent on the virtual server

3. Use yum to perform update



Allow the following in the firewall and security group settings:

Tip • Egress: TCP/Port 53, UDP/Port 53, TCP/Port 80

### 2.1.3.3 Japanese Language Settings for Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS (Version 6.x)

You can create an image of the English Linux OS provided by the service and use it in Japanese.

Supported OS:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5 64bit (English)
- CentOS 6.5 64bit (English)

Log in to the virtual server that you want to use in Japanese and configure the following settings:

#### Time Zone Settings

Change the setting of the time zone to "Asia/Tokyo."

1. Change the time zone setting in /etc/sysconfig/clock as shown below.

```
ZONE="Asia/Tokyo"
```

2. Overwrite /etc/localtime with the following command:

```
# cp -f /usr/share/zoneinfo/Asia/Tokyo /etc/localtime
```

#### Checking the System Clock

Execute the following command and confirm that the setting of the system clock is set to "UTC."

```
# cat /etc/adjtime
0.000069 1423210340 0.000000
1423210340
UTC
```

#### Changing the Language

Change the language setting in /etc/sysconfig/i18n as shown below.

```
LANG="ja_JP.UTF-8"
```

#### Changing the Keyboard Layout

Change /etc/sysconfig/keyboard as shown below.

```
KEYTABLE="jp106"
MODEL="jp106"
LAYOUT="jp"
KEYBOARDTYPE="pc"
```

## Reflecting Changed Settings

When you have completed all of the changes, shut down the virtual server and make sure that it has entered SHUTOFF state before you start it.



Important

Because settings may not be reflected if you restart, you must shut down the system entirely and then start it.

## 2.1.3.4 Japanese Language Settings for Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS (Version 7.x)

You can create an image of the English Linux OS provided by the service and use it in Japanese.

Supported OS:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2 64bit (English)
- CentOS 7.2 64bit (English)

Log in to the virtual server that you want to use in Japanese and configure the following settings:

### Time Zone Settings

Change the setting of the time zone to "Asia/Tokyo."

1. Execute the following command:

```
# timedatectl set-timezone Asia/Tokyo
```

2. To confirm that the command has been completed successfully, execute the following command:

```
# timedatectl status
Local time: Mon 2016-08-01 18:57:37 JST
Universal time: Mon 2016-08-01 09:57:37 UTC
RTC time: Mon 2016-08-01 09:57:36
Time zone: Asia/Tokyo (JST, +0900)
NTP enabled: yes
NTP synchronized: no
RTC in local TZ: no
DST active: n/a
```

### Changing the Language

Execute the following command:

```
# localectl set-locale LANG=ja_JP.UTF-8
```

### Changing the Keyboard Layout

1. Execute the following command:

```
# localectl set-keymap jp106
```

2. To confirm that the command has been completed successfully, execute the following command:

```
# localectl status
System Locale: LANG=ja_JP.UTF-8
VC Keymap: jp106
```

## Reflecting Changed Settings

When you have completed all of the changes, shut down the virtual server and make sure that it has entered SHUTOFF state before you start it.



Important

Because settings may not be reflected if you restart, you must shut down the system entirely and then start it.

## 2.1.4 Software Provision Service

### 2.1.4.1 Software Provision Service

This service provides a virtual server with software installed.

#### Provided Software

Table 12: Software Provision Service

| Software             | Version Provided                                   | Available Regions               |    |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----|
|                      |                                                    | Eastern Japan,<br>Western Japan | UK |
| Microsoft SQL Server | Microsoft SQL Server 2014 SE 64bit English Version | ✓                               |    |

### Combinations of Virtual Server Type and Software That Cannot Be Used

The following combinations of virtual server type and software cannot be used because they do not meet the operating requirements of the software.

Table 13: List of Combinations of Virtual Server Type and Software That Are Inoperable

| Software             | Version Provided                                   | Inoperable virtual server type |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Microsoft SQL Server | Microsoft SQL Server 2014 SE 64bit English Version | P-1                            |

### Required Number of Licenses

Table 14: List of Required Number of Licenses by Virtual Server Type

| Software             | Name of Virtual Server Type | Required Number of Licenses |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Microsoft SQL Server | T-1                         | 1                           |
|                      | C-1                         | 1                           |
|                      | C-2                         | 1                           |
|                      | C-4                         | 1                           |
|                      | C-8                         | 2                           |
|                      | C-16                        | 4                           |

| Software | Name of Virtual Server Type | Required Number of Licenses |
|----------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|          | S-1                         | 1                           |
|          | S-2                         | 1                           |
|          | S-4                         | 1                           |
|          | S-8                         | 2                           |
|          | S-16                        | 4                           |
|          | M-1                         | 1                           |
|          | M-2                         | 1                           |
|          | M-4                         | 1                           |
|          | M-8                         | 2                           |
|          | M-16                        | 4                           |
|          | XM-4                        | 1                           |

## How to Use This Service

You can create a virtual server from one of the image types included in the software shown below:

Table 15: Software Provision Service, List of Images

| Image Name                                               | OS and Software                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows Server 2012 R2 SE + SQL Server 2014 SE (English) | OS: Windows Server 2012 SE R2 64bit English Version<br>Software: Microsoft SQL Server 2014 SE 64bit English Version |

After creating a virtual server, refer to the following information for how to use the software:

Table 16: Software Provision Service Usage Guide

| Software             | Reference                                                                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Microsoft SQL Server | <a href="#">SQL Server 2014 Standard Edition Usage Guide</a> on page 241 |

## 2.1.5 Software Support Service

### 2.1.5.1 Software Support Service

We offer software support for some of the software that is provided with a virtual server (including the OS).

This service allows you to change the support option for the OS or for the software that is used on the virtual server to meet your support requirements. Change these settings after the virtual server is created.

## Software Whose Support Option You Can Change

- OS Provision Service

Table 17: OS that Allow Changes to Support Options

| OS Type | OS Provided                                         | Available Regions            |    |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----|
|         |                                                     | Eastern Japan, Western Japan | UK |
| Windows | Windows Server 2008 SE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | ✓                            |    |
|         | Windows Server 2008 EE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | ✓                            |    |
|         | Windows Server 2012 SE R2 64bit English Version     | ✓                            |    |
|         | Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit English Version        | ✓                            |    |
| Linux   | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5 64bit English Version  | ✓                            |    |
|         | Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2 64bit English Version  | ✓                            |    |

- Software Provision Service

Table 18: Software that Allows Changes to Support Options

| Software                       | Version Provided                                                 | Available Regions            |    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----|
|                                |                                                                  | Eastern Japan, Western Japan | UK |
| Microsoft SQL Server           | Microsoft SQL Server 2014 SE 64bit English Version               | ✓                            |    |
| Interstage Application Server  | Interstage Application Server Standard-J Edition V11             | ✓                            |    |
| Symfoware Server               | Symfoware Server Lite Edition V12                                | ✓                            |    |
| Systemwalker Operation Manager | Systemwalker Operation Manager Standard Edition V13              | ✓                            |    |
| Systemwalker Centric Manager   | Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Managers) V15 | ✓                            |    |
|                                | Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Agents) V15   | ✓                            |    |

## Functions Included

- Support Option Change Function

When a virtual server is created, the system default support level is configured for the software that is used on that virtual server.

Table 19: System Default Support Level Overview (OS that Allow Changes to Support Options)

| OS                                                  | Default Support Level |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Windows Server 2008 SE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | No support            |
| Windows Server 2008 EE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | No support            |
| Windows Server 2012 SE R2 64bit English Version     | No support            |
| Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit English Version        | No support            |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5 64bit English Version  | Support on weekdays   |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2 64bit English Version  | Support on weekdays   |

Table 20: System Default Support Level Overview (Software that Allows Changes to Support Options)

| Software                                                         | Default Support Level |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Microsoft SQL Server 2014 SE 64bit English Version               | No support            |
| Interstage Application Server Standard-J Edition V11             | 24-hour support       |
| Symfoware Server Lite Edition V12                                | 24-hour support       |
| Systemwalker Operation Manager Standard Edition V13              | 24-hour support       |
| Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Managers) V15 | 24-hour support       |
| Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Agents) V15   | 24-hour support       |

Use the support option change function to change the support level for the software type.



You can change the support level to any of the different support levels provided for the same software.

Table 21: Changing Support Options, List of Support Levels (OS)

| OS                                                  | Support Levels that Allow Changes                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows Server 2008 SE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No support</li><li>Support on weekdays</li></ul> |

| OS                                                  | Support Levels that Allow Changes                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                                                      |
| Windows Server 2008 EE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No support</li> <li>• Support on weekdays</li> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul> |
| Windows Server 2012 SE R2 64bit English Version     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No support</li> <li>• Support on weekdays</li> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul> |
| Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit English Version        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No support</li> <li>• Support on weekdays</li> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul> |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5 64bit English Version  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support on weekdays</li> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                       |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2 64bit English Version  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support on weekdays</li> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                       |

Table 22: Changing Support Options, List of Support Levels (Software)

| Software                                                         | Support Levels that Allow Changes                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Microsoft SQL Server 2014 SE 64bit English Version               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No support</li> <li>• Support on weekdays</li> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul> |
| Interstage Application Server Standard-J Edition V11             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                                                      |
| Symfoware Server Lite Edition V12                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                                                      |
| Systemwalker Operation Manager Standard Edition V13              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                                                      |
| Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Managers) V15 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                                                      |
| Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Agents) V15   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 24-hour support</li> </ul>                                                      |

## Applicable Prices, Billing Start and Inquiry Start Timing

- Applicable prices

The option with the higher usage charges is applied for the billing month when the software support option was changed.

- Start of the billing period



Note

You can change the support level even if the virtual server has not been started. In this case, the billing period starts when you start the virtual server for the first time after applying the changes.

- Time required for the inquiry service to become available

If you change the settings to "Support Available," the inquiry service becomes available within five business days.



Note

You can change the support level even if the virtual server has not been started. In this case, the inquiry service becomes available within five business days of when you start the virtual server for the first time after applying the changes.

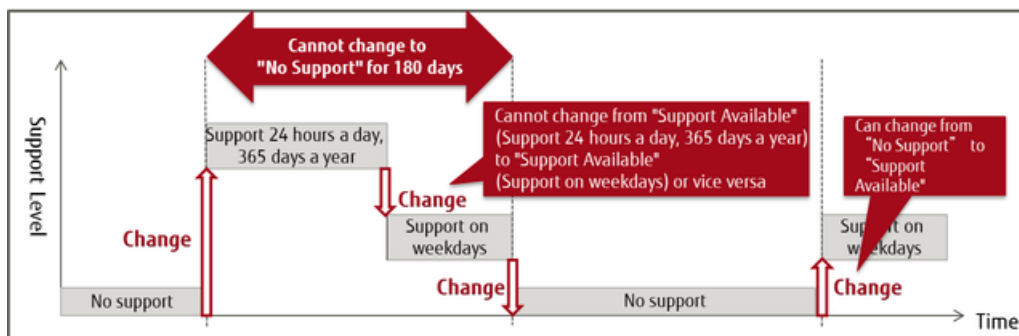
## Limitations Related to Changing Support Options

This section explains the limitations to note regarding software for which "No Support" is a support level.



Important

When you switch from "No Support" to "Support Available," you cannot switch back to "No Support" for 180 days starting from the day when the changes were applied.



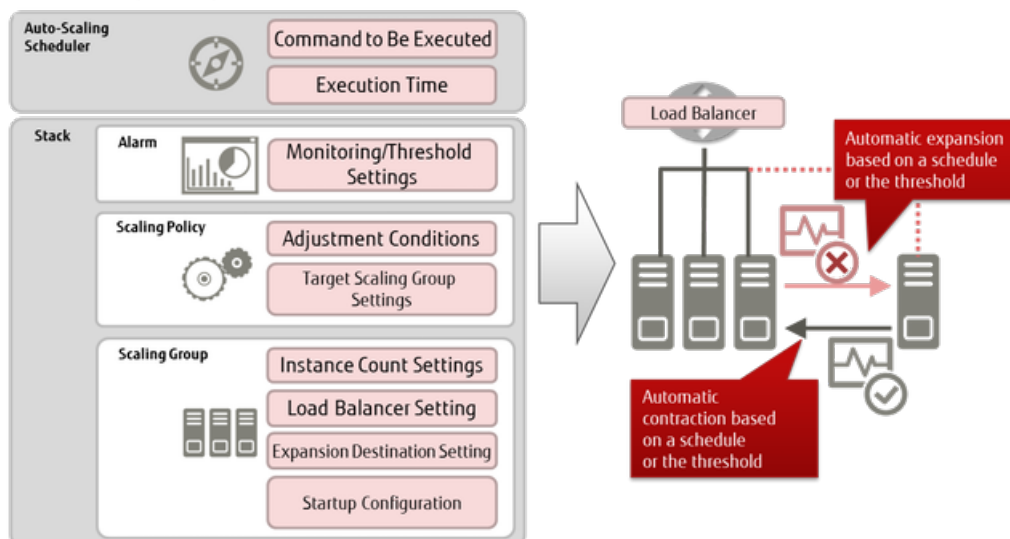
## 2.1.6 Auto-Scaling

### 2.1.6.1 Auto-Scaling Settings

You can set a scaling group that has specific conditions (such as the number of virtual servers) in the stack definition in order to automatically control the increase and decrease of resources.

Figure 16: Overview of Auto-Scaling

Set up the orchestration function by configuring the following settings:



You can configure the auto-scaling function settings as follows.

## Scaling Group Management Function

Set the following items to create scaling groups and register them in the stack. You can also configure settings for the [health check function](#), which detects abnormality on scaled-out virtual servers and starts recovery automatically.

Table 23: List of Settings for Scaling Groups

| Item                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Required |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Cool down period (Cooldown)                      | Specify this setting, in seconds, to prevent the next scaling operation from starting immediately after the previous scaling operation was completed                                                                                                  |          |
| Startup configuration name (LaunchConfiguration) | Specify the name of a startup configuration to start the virtual server                                                                                                                                                                               | Yes      |
| Load balancer name (LoadBalancerNames)           | Specify as a list the names of the load balancers that are included in the scaling operation                                                                                                                                                          |          |
| Maximum number (MaxSize)                         | Specify the maximum number of virtual servers to be scaled                                                                                                                                                                                            | Yes      |
| Minimum number (MinSize)                         | Specify the minimum number of virtual servers to be scaled<br><br> <b>Tip</b> This is the number of servers that are created initially when the stack is registered. | Yes      |
| Availability zone name (AvailabilityZones)       | Specify the name of the availability zone where you intend to create the scaling group                                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |
| Subnet ID list (VPCZoneIdentifier)               | Specify as a list the subnet IDs that exist in the availability zone that you specified for the availability zone name                                                                                                                                |          |

## Scaling Policy Settings

Specify the following items to set a scaling policy.

Table 24: List of Settings for Scaling Policies

| Item                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Required |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Scaling type (AdjustmentType) | Specify how to increase or decrease the number of virtual servers by selecting one of the following types <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>ChangeInCapacity</b><br/>Adds the specified number of virtual servers when the number is positive, and deletes the specified number of virtual servers when the number is negative</li><li>• <b>ExactCapacity</b><br/>Changes the number of virtual servers to the specified number</li><li>• <b>PercentChangeInCapacity</b><br/>Increases or decreases by the specified ratio (percentage), from 1 to 100</li></ul> | Yes      |

| Item                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Required |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Scaling group name (AutoScalingGroupName) | Specify the name of the scaling group on which you intend to set the scaling policy                                                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |
| Cool down period (Cooldown)               | Specify this setting, in seconds, to prevent the next scaling operation from starting immediately after the previous scaling operation was completed                                                                                                               |          |
| Scaling value (ScalingAdjustment)         | Specify the scaling adjustment value according to the type that you specify for the scaling type<br><br>Example: When you set the scaling type as "ChangeInCapacity" and set the change value as "-1," a virtual server will be deleted when the policy is applied | Yes      |

## Startup Configuration Settings

Define the settings for when a scaling policy is applied and the virtual servers that are added are actually started.



Only one port can be connected to the virtual servers in the scaling group.

Note

Table 25: List of Settings for Startup Configurations

| Item                                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                         | Required |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Image ID (ImageId)                                                    | Specify the ID or name of the image to be used on the virtual server to be started                                                                  | Yes      |
| Virtual server type (InstanceType)                                    | Specify the type name (flavor name) of the virtual server to be started                                                                             | Yes      |
| Key name (KeyName)                                                    | Specify the name of the key pair that is set on the virtual server to be started                                                                    |          |
| Security group (SecurityGroups)                                       | Specify as a list the security group names to be set on the virtual server to be started                                                            |          |
| User data (UserData)                                                  | Specify the user data to be executed when a virtual server is started                                                                               |          |
| List of block storage device mapping settings (BlockDeviceMappingsV2) | Describe the <a href="#">block device mapping settings</a> so that the device will be attached as block storage to the virtual server to be started |          |

## Support of the Alarm Function

The alarm setting of the monitoring service specifies a scaling policy as an action to be taken when the value reaches the threshold. You can adjust auto-scaling according to the workload by setting the thresholds for alarms to call different scaling policies.



Tip

You can register multiple actions for one alarm. Notifications are available by email when scale out or scale in occurs.

## Example of Setting Auto-Scaling

An example of a stack definition that describes conditions for auto-scaling is shown below. In this example, the conditions are set as described below.

- The following are defined for the scaling group:
  - Specification of a load balancer in order to distribute the load on the auto-scaled virtual servers (balance the traffic load to port 80 (HTTP))
  - Specification of the maximum number of virtual servers as three
  - Specification of the minimum number of virtual servers as two
  - Specification of the subnet to which auto-scaled virtual servers are connected
  - Specification of the startup configuration (specification of values by using variables that are declared in the parameters section)
- The following policies are defined as the scaling policies:
  - `web_server_scaleout_policy`: Specification of "ChangeInCapacity" for the scaling type, and setting of one (+1) for the number of virtual servers to be added when the alarm is raised
  - `web_server_scalein_policy`: Specification of "ChangeInCapacity" for the scaling type, and setting of one (-1) for the number of virtual servers to be deleted when the alarm is raised
- The following two alarms are defined as the alarms:
  - `cpu_alarm_high`: Application of `web_server_scaleout_policy` when a CPU usage rate of higher than 50% that continues for one minute or more is detected
  - `cpu_alarm_low`: Application of `web_server_scalein_policy` when a CPU usage rate of 15% or lower that continues for one minute or more is detected

Example of stack definition:

```
heat_template_version: 2013-05-23

description:
  Autoscaling sample template.

parameters:
  az:
    type: string
    default: jp-east-1a
  param_image_id:
    type: string
# ImageID of CentOS 6.5 64bit
    default: 46676b95-fc6a-4ad2-b6aa-320ab4288d6f
  param_flavor:
    type: string
    default: standard

  key_name:
    type: string
    description: SSH key to connect to the servers
    default: sample_keypair00
  autoscale_security_group:
    type: comma_delimited_list
    default: sample_SG00

resources:
  web_server_group:
    type: FCX::AutoScaling::AutoScalingGroup
    properties:
      AvailabilityZones: [{get_param: az}]
      LaunchConfigurationName: {get_resource: launch_config}
      MinSize: '2'
      MaxSize: '3'
# subnet ID for auto-scaling
    VPCZoneIdentifier: [38e6630f-3257-4ee8-a006-f6d57ceaa2c3]
    LoadBalancerNames:
      - {get_resource: fj_elb}

  launch_config:
```

```

    type: FCX::AutoScaling::LaunchConfiguration
    properties:
      ImageId: { get_param: param_image_id }
      InstanceType: { get_param: param_flavor }
      KeyName: {get_param: key_name}
      SecurityGroups: {get_param: autoscale_security_group}
      BlockDeviceMappingsV2: [{source_type: 'image', destination_type:
'volume', boot_index: '0', device_name: '/dev/vda', volume_size: '40',
uuid: {get_param: param_image_id}, delete_on_termination: true}]

    fj_elb:
      type: FCX::ExpandableLoadBalancer::LoadBalancer
      properties:
# subnet ID for auto-scaling
      Subnets: [38e6630f-3257-4ee8-a006-f6d57ceaa2c3]
      Listeners:
      - {LoadBalancerPort: '80', InstancePort: '80',
        Protocol: 'HTTP', InstanceProtocol: 'HTTP' }
      HealthCheck: {Target: 'HTTP:80/healthcheck', HealthyThreshold: '3',
        UnhealthyThreshold: '5', Interval: '30', Timeout: '5'}
      Version: 2014-09-30
      Scheme: internal
      LoadBalancerName: fjsampleELBaz1

    web_server_scaleout_policy:
      type: FCX::AutoScaling::ScalingPolicy
      properties:
        AdjustmentType: ChangeInCapacity
        AutoScalingGroupName: {get_resource: web_server_group}
        Cooldown: '60'
        ScalingAdjustment: '1'

    web_server_scalein_policy:
      type: FCX::AutoScaling::ScalingPolicy
      properties:
        AdjustmentType: ChangeInCapacity
        AutoScalingGroupName: {get_resource: web_server_group}
        Cooldown: '60'
        ScalingAdjustment: '-1'

    cpu_alarm_high:
      type: OS::Ceilometer::Alarm
      properties:
        description: Scale-out if the average CPU > 50% for 1 minute
        meter_name: fcx.compute.cpu_util
        statistic: avg
        period: '60'
        evaluation_periods: '1'
        threshold: '50'
        alarm_actions:
        - {get_attr: [web_server_scaleout_policy, AlarmUrl]}
        matching_metadata: {'metadata.user_metadata.groupname': {get_resource:
'web_server_group'}}
        comparison_operator: gt

    cpu_alarm_low:
      type: OS::Ceilometer::Alarm
      properties:
        description: Scale-in if the average CPU < 15% for 1 minute
        meter_name: fcx.compute.cpu_util
        statistic: avg
        period: '60'
        evaluation_periods: '1'
        threshold: '15'
        alarm_actions:
        - {get_attr: [web_server_scalein_policy, AlarmUrl]}
        matching_metadata: {'metadata.user_metadata.groupname': {get_resource:
'web_server_group'}}

```

## 2.1.6.2 Health Check Function

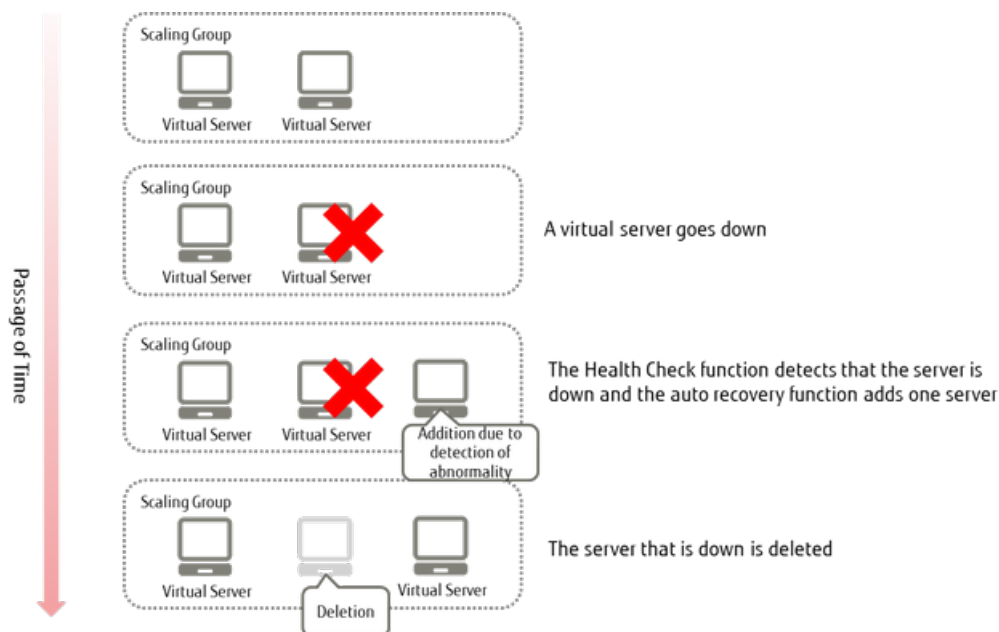
Following auto-scaling, this function detects abnormality on the scaled-out virtual servers and starts recovery automatically.

### Functions Included

You can use the following functions for scaled-out virtual servers:

- Health check function, for scaled-out virtual servers
- Auto recovery function, for virtual servers where abnormality was detected by the health check function

Figure 17: Operation of the Auto Recovery Function on a Virtual Server Where Abnormality Was Detected by the Health Check Function



### Auto Recovery Function for a Virtual Server Where Abnormality Was Detected by the Health Check Function

To use this function, add the following items to the appropriate categories of the settings for auto-scaling:

- Settings for the health check function for scaling groups

Table 26: List of Scaling Group Settings Regarding the Health Check Function

| Item                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Required |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Cool down period (Cooldown) | <p>Specify this setting, in seconds, to prevent the next scaling operation from starting immediately after the previous scaling operation was completed (<a href="#">Formula for Estimating Cool Down Period after Auto-Scaling</a> on page 241)</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Important</b> When you use this function in conjunction with auto-scaling based on the monitoring of thresholds, such as CPU usage rate, specify this</p> |          |

| Item                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Required |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|                                                                    | field instead of specifying the cool down period in the scaling policies.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |          |
| Maximum number (MaxSize)                                           | <p>Specify the maximum number of virtual servers to be scaled</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> When you use this function, we recommend that you specify a value which is the minimum number plus 1 or more.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> When the maximum number of virtual servers have been created and abnormality is detected on a virtual server, the addition of virtual servers is not carried out, and only the deletion of virtual servers is carried out.</p> | Yes      |
| Minimum number (MinSize)                                           | <p>Specify the minimum number of virtual servers to be scaled</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> This is the number of servers that are created initially when the stack is registered.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Yes      |
| Health check type (HealthCheckType)                                | Supports only "ELB." When you specify the load balancer name and this parameter, the auto recovery function for virtual servers where abnormality was detected by the health check function is enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |          |
| Time to wait before starting health check (HealthCheckGracePeriod) | Specify this setting, in seconds, to wait for a period after scaled-out virtual servers are started before starting the health check                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |

- Settings for scaling policies

Table 27: List of Scaling Policy Settings Regarding the Health Check Function

| Item                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Required |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Scaling type (AdjustmentType)     | Specify "ChangeInCapacity"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Yes      |
| Cool down period (Cooldown)       | Specify this setting, in seconds, to prevent the next scaling operation from starting immediately after the previous scaling operation was completed ( <a href="#">Formula for Estimating Cool Down Period after Auto-Scaling</a> on page 241)                               |          |
| Scaling value (ScalingAdjustment) | <p>Specify the scaling adjustment value</p> <p> <b>Note</b> Specify a value which is lower than the maximum number that is set for the scaling group, and within the range of 1 to 5.</p> | Yes      |

- Settings for alarms

Table 28: List of Alarm Settings Regarding the Health Check Function

| Item                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Required |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Action (alarm_actions)                                             | Specify the URL of the action required in order to delete the virtual server that is experiencing abnormality                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |          |
| Comparison operator (comparison_operator)                          | Specify comparison operators that are used with threshold values <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "le": Less than or equal</li> <li>• "ge": Greater than or equal</li> <li>• "eq": Equal to</li> <li>• "lt": Less than</li> <li>• "gt": Greater than</li> <li>• "ne": Not equal</li> </ul>                                                                                    |          |
| Number of times that constitutes alarm status (evaluation_periods) | Specify the number of times the threshold condition must be reached in order to be considered to be in alarm status                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Meta data search condition (matching_metadata)                     | Specify "{ 'resource_id': <load balancer name> }"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| Meter name (meter_name)                                            | Specify "fcx.loadbalancing.instance.unhealthy"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Yes      |
| Period that constitutes alarm status (period)                      | Specify how long of a period (sec) the threshold must be exceeded in order to be considered to be in alarm status                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| Statistic type (statistic)                                         | Specify "min" to count the virtual servers that are experiencing abnormality                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |          |
| Threshold (threshold)                                              | Specify the threshold for the number of virtual servers that are experiencing abnormality. Specify the same value as the scaling adjustment value (ScalingAdjustment) that you specified in the scaling policy settings. If you specify two or more, auto recovery will not be performed until the number of servers experiencing abnormality reaches or exceeds the specified value. | Yes      |
| Repeat actions (repeat_actions)                                    | Specify "true" to use the health check function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |          |



Note

The number of virtual servers that will be added after execution of the auto recovery function is determined based on the scaling policy that is set for the scaling group that is using the health check function. When auto recovery is performed, the number of virtual servers is determined according to the following formula:

```
(Number of virtual servers running in the scaling group before auto
recovery is performed) + (number of virtual servers that will be
added according to the setting in the scaling policy) - (number of
virtual servers which were determined to be experiencing abnormality
by the health check)
```



Note

As a result of deleting virtual servers where an abnormality was detected, the number of virtual servers may fall below the minimum number of virtual servers that is set in the scaling group. In this case, virtual servers will be added automatically until the number of virtual servers reaches the minimum number required.

## 2.1.6.3 Auto-Scaling Scheduler Function

With this function you can control the execution of scale out by specifying the date and time for execution. You can use the schedule function to automate scaling out for a predictable increase of workload, such as the busy season of your business.

This function provides the method to execute the REST API at the specified time.



Tip

You can realize the operation of an increased number of virtual servers in the busy season by describing the REST API to control the scaling policy in order to increase the number.

## Registering a Schedule

Set the following items to register a schedule.

Table 29: List of Settings for a Schedule

| Item                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Required |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Schedule name            | From 1 to 64 alphanumeric characters can be used.<br> Important The name must be unique among all projects in the same region. | Yes      |
| HTTP methods             | Specify the HTTP methods for the REST API that is to be executed. Only the POST method can be specified                                                                                                          | Yes      |
| URL                      | Specify the URL for the signal to be the target of the schedule.                                                                                                                                                 | Yes      |
| Date and time to execute | Specify the date and time at which to execute the REST API                                                                                                                                                       | Yes      |
| Project ID               | Specify ID of the project in which the schedule is to be executed                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |



Note

The format for the URL for the signal is as follows:

```
http://<orchestration API end point>/v1/<project ID>/stacks/<stack name>/<stack ID>/resources/<scaling policy name>/signal
```



Note

Specify the execution date and time in the five fields of the cron-command-compliant format that is shown below. (Fields are separated by single-byte spaces)

```
minute hour dom month dow
```

Table 30: Description of Each Field and Values That Can Be Specified

| Field  | Values That Can Be Specified           |
|--------|----------------------------------------|
| Minute | From 0 to 59, * specifies every minute |
| Hour   | From 0 to 23, * specifies every hour   |

| Field        | Values That Can Be Specified                                                  |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Day of Month | From 1 to 31, * specifies every day                                           |
| Month        | From 1 to 12, or from jan to dec, * specifies every month                     |
| Day of Week  | From 0 to 7 (0 and 7 specify Sunday) or from sun to sat, * specifies all days |



Important

Confirm that a valid trust token exists, on which the user to whom you delegate the execution of schedules, the trusted user (orchestration user), the project ID, and the role (System Owner role) match. Check the trust token by using the following API, which is explained in the section about IDs and access management in API Reference Manual.

1. Check the trust token (list)

Confirm that a trust token that meets the following conditions exists.

Table 31: Conditions for Confirming Existence of Trust Token

| Item            | Value                                          |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| trustor_user_id | uuid of the user to whom you delegate the task |
| expires_at      | null                                           |
| trustee_user_id | 1f708e1376784e529a7b09eb5ff1a5fc               |
| project_id      | uuid of the project where the stack exists     |

2. Confirm the role on the trust token

Table 32: Conditions for Confirming Role on Trust Token

| Item     | Value                                                   |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| trust_id | uuid of the trust token that meets the conditions above |
| role_id  | 0739580a550d4a0f9c78f45a9f038c05                        |

## Deleting a Schedule

You can delete a schedule that is already registered.

## 2.1.7 Image

### 2.1.7.1 Managing Virtual Server Images

Create and manage images of created virtual servers.

## Creating an Image

Create virtual server images of virtual servers that you have created.



Note

First, you must shut down the virtual server of which you will create an image.

Also, do not start the target virtual server until creation of an image has been completed. If you start the target virtual server while the image is being created, the content of the volume may be updated.



Note

For additional storage, relocate a storage volume by detaching and reattaching it, or use a function such as the snapshot function to duplicate the storage volume.



Warning

Perform the following steps before creating an image of a virtual server whose OS is CentOS, Ubuntu, or Red Hat Enterprise Linux. If the following settings remain in the image, network communication with the virtual server created from that image will not be possible.

1. Disable `write_net_rules`

```
/lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules
```

Comment out (add a # to the beginning of the line) the following line in the above file.

```
DRIVERS=="?*"; IMPORT{program}="write_net_rules"
```

2. Delete `/etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules`

```
rm -f /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules
```



Warning

Perform the [procedure to run Sysprep on Windows OS](#) before you create an image of a virtual server whose OS is Windows.

Table 33: Creating an Image (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item             | Description                              | Required |
|------------------|------------------------------------------|----------|
| Image Name       | Specify a name that identifies the image |          |
| Disk Format      | Specify "raw"                            |          |
| Container Format | Specify "bare"                           |          |
| Force Option     | Specify "true"                           |          |

## Acquiring/Updating Image Metadata

You can check and edit metadata that is assigned to virtual server images that have been created.

Table 34: Modifying Image Metadata (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item       | Description                                            | Required |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Image Name | Specify a name that identifies the image               |          |
| Metadata   | Specify the metadata for the image in Key-Value format |          |

## Deleting a Image

Delete images that have been registered.

### 2.1.7.2 Sharing Virtual Server Images

Virtual server images from the created virtual servers are shared between different projects.

## Functions Included

The following operations are available for virtual server images that have been created.

- Creating shared member information
- Modifying shared member information
- Deleting shared member information

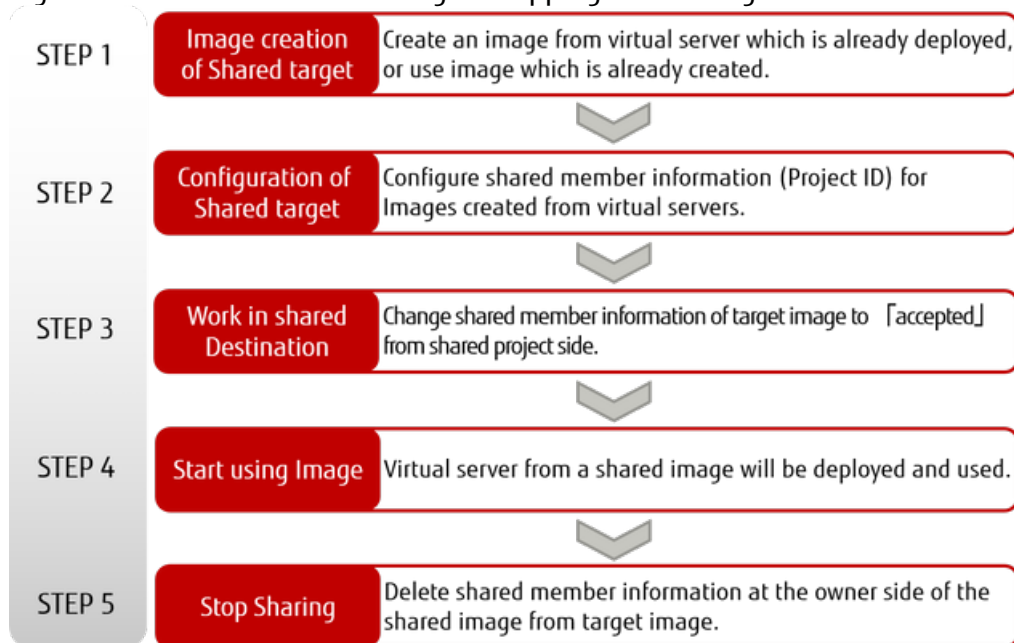


Set the visibility for a virtual server image to be shared to "private."

Tip

## How to Use This Service

Figure 18: Procedure from Starting to Stopping the Sharing of a Virtual Server Image



## Points to Note

- When stopping the sharing of a virtual server image, be sure to delete the shared member information from the target image.

### 2.1.7.3 Procedure to Run Sysprep on Windows OS

In order to create an image of your Windows virtual server by using the image archiving service, you must run Sysprep on the Windows virtual server of which you intend to create an image. The procedure is shown below for reference.

## About this task

For details on Sysprep, refer to the Microsoft TechNet website (<https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/>), and be sure you fully understand Sysprep before you actually run it.



Warning

Fujitsu does not take responsibility for any problems that are caused by running Sysprep. The customer takes full responsibility for carrying out this procedure.



Tip

We recommend that you take snapshots or create backups of system block storage before you start the procedure to run Sysprep.

## Procedure

---

### 1. Taking a Snapshot

Take a snapshot of the system storage using the snapshot function.



Perform the subsequent procedures on Windows OS.

Tip

### 2. Allowing remote access to the computer

Remote access to the computer is allowed by default. If remote access is not allowed, change the setting to allow it by following the procedure below.

- For Windows Server 2012 SE

From the Start menu, click **[Control Panel] > [System and Security] > [Allow remote access]**, and then select **[Allow remote connections to this computer (L)]** in the dialog box.

- For Windows Server 2008 SE or EE

From the Start menu, click **[Control Panel] > [System and Security] > [Allow remote access]**, and then select one of the following in the dialog box:

- **[Allow connections from computers running any version of Remote Desktop (less secure)(L)]**
- **[Allow connections only from computers running Remote Desktop with Network Level Authentication (more secure)(N)]**

### 3. Editing of the sysprep response file

Edit the sysprep response file as necessary. The sysprep response file is stored in the following location on the virtual server:

- For Windows Server 2012 SE

C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\ans\_w2k12.xml

- For Windows Server 2008 SE

C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\ans\_w2k8\_se.xml

- For Windows Server 2008 EE

C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\ans\_w2k8\_ee.xml

### 4. Deleting the log file

Delete the Cloudbase-init log file. You can find the path to the Cloudbase-init log file at the following locations on a Windows OS:

- Settings for the log file in cloudbase-init-unattend

<Location where Cloudbase-init is installed>\conf\cloudbase-init-unattend.conf

- Location where the log exists: logdir in the [DEFAULT] section
- Log file: logfile in the [DEFAULT] section



Tip

Normally, the path to the log file is as follows:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Cloudbase Solutions\Cloudbase-Init\log\cloudbase-init-unattend.log

- Settings for the log file in cloudbase-init

<Location where Cloudbase-init is installed>\conf\cloudbase-init.conf

- Location where the log exists: logdir in the [DEFAULT] section

- Log file: logfile in the [DEFAULT] section



Tip

Normally, the path to the log file is as follows:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Cloudbase Solutions\Cloudbase-Init\log\cloudbase-init.log

#### 5. Deleting the registry information

Delete the Cloudbase-init registry information. Delete the following path by using the registry editor:

- For 64-bit Windows OS

HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\Software\Wow6432Node\Cloudbase Solutions\Cloudbase-Init

#### 6. Starting the command prompt

- For Windows Server 2012 SE

On the desktop screen, right-click the [Windows] logo button and click [Command Prompt (Admin)].

- For Windows Server 2008 SE or EE

1. Click the [Start] button.
2. Click [All Programs] > [Accessories].
3. Right-click [Command Prompt] and click [Run as administrator].

#### 7. Moving the current directory

Execute the following command to move the current directory:

```
cd C:\Windows\System32\sysprep\
```

#### 8. Running of sysprep

Run the following batch file:

```
vsysprep.bat
```

## Results

The virtual server will be shut down automatically after a few minutes. Make sure that the status of the virtual server is "SHUTOFF" before you create an image.

After creating an image, follow the procedure below on the virtual server:

#### 1. Restoring a snapshot

Restore the snapshot of the system storage using the snapshot function.

#### 2. Starting virtual servers

Start the virtual server.

## 2.1.8 Virtual Server Import Service

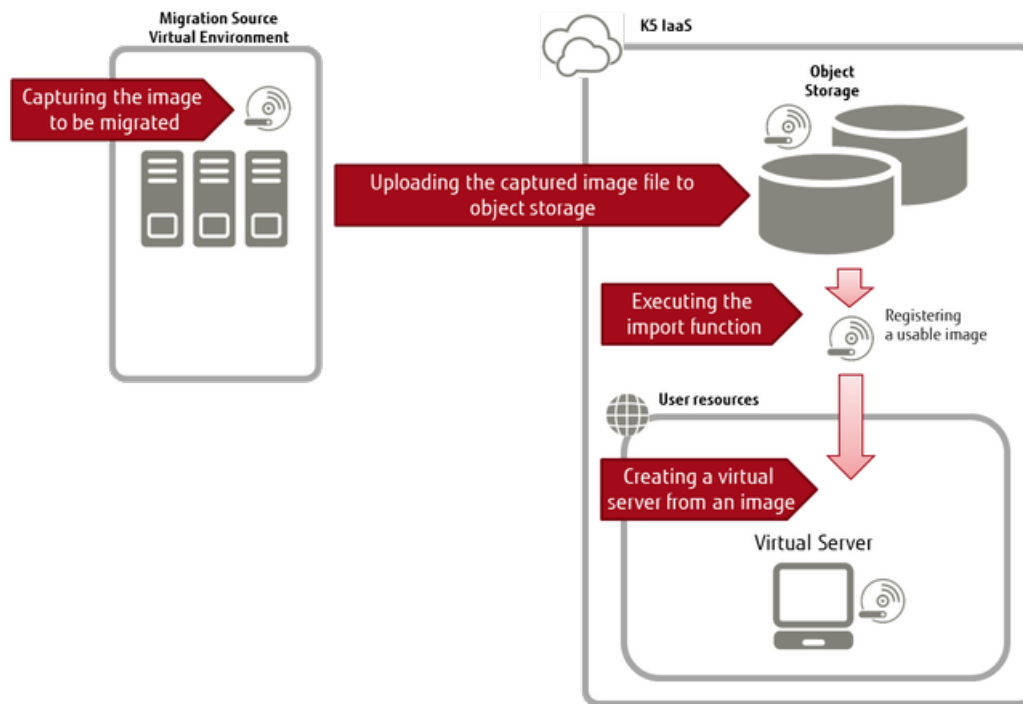
### 2.1.8.1 Overview of Functions

#### 2.1.8.1.1 Virtual Server Import Service

This service is used to migrate a virtual server running on your on-premises virtual environment to K5 IaaS. This function allows you to register image files that you have captured as image files that can be used in K5 IaaS.

A diagram that shows how this service is used is shown below.

Figure 19: Using the Virtual Server Import Service



## Supported Migration Source Virtual Environments

A list of supported migration source virtual environments is shown below.

Table 35: List of Migration Source Virtual Environments

| Virtual Environment                                            | Product and Version                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VMware                                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESX/ESXi 6.0 5.5 5.1 5.0</li> <li>vCenter Server 6.0 5.5 5.1 5.0</li> </ul> |
| FUJITSU Software ServerView Resource Orchestrator <sup>1</sup> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ServerView Resource Orchestrator v3.1 v3.2</li> </ul>                       |



BIOS startup is supported in any virtual environment. UEFI startup is not supported.

Note

## Supported Migration Source Guest OS

A list of supported migration source guest OS is shown below.

Table 36: List of Migration Source Guest OS

| OS Type | Supported OS                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows Server 2008 R2 SE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li> <li>Windows Server 2008 R2 EE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li> </ul> |

<sup>1</sup> Hypervisors are supported for VMware only.

| OS Type | Supported OS                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li> <li>Windows Server 2012 R2 SE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li> </ul> |
| Linux   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CentOS 6.5 64bit</li> <li>Ubuntu 14.04 LTS 64bit</li> </ul>                                                                                              |

## Limitations on Migration Source Virtual Server Configurations

- Disk Configuration
 

Only system storage that is on the startup disk can be imported. Additional storage cannot be imported.

In addition, no support is provided for any of the following:

  - Dynamic disk (if the OS type is Windows)
  - Formats other than NTFS/FAT32 (if the OS type is Windows)
  - Disks encrypted with BitLocker (if the OS type is Windows)
  - A Windows system of which the Windows folder has been renamed to anything other than the default "Windows" (if the OS type is Windows)
  - GPT format disks
  - Multi-boot environments
- Network Interface
 

At least one network interface must be defined.

## Handling of Licenses

The handling of licenses by type of imported OS is shown below.

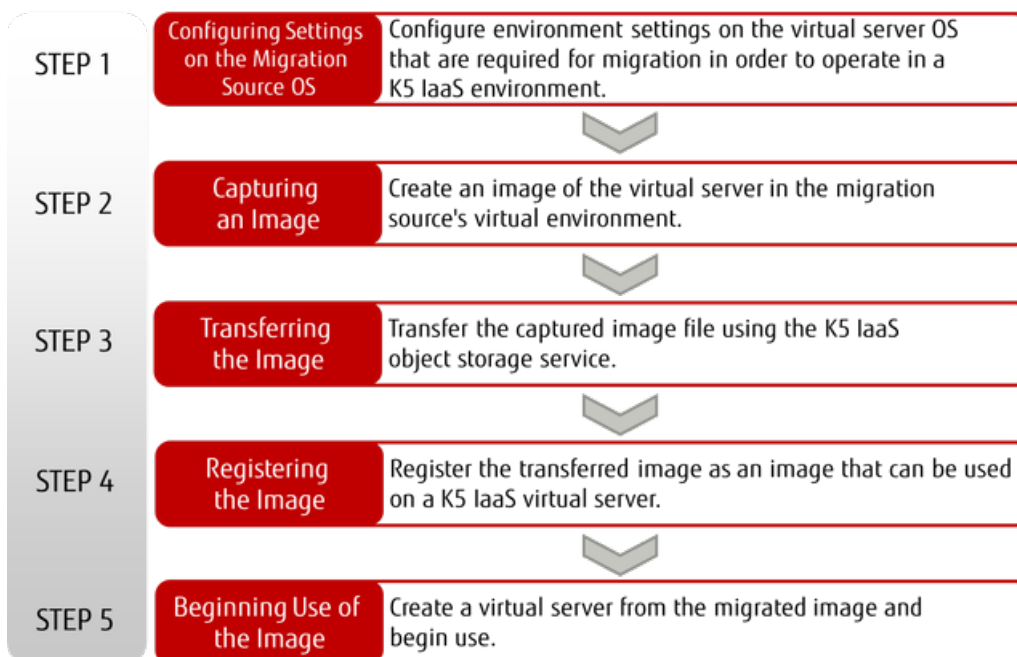
**Table 37: Handling of Licenses by Type of Imported OS**

| Type of Imported OS | Handling of License                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows             | When you import a virtual server, the license is automatically changed to an SPLA license. After importing, perform KMS activation.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Linux               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CentOS               <p>The started virtual server is shown in the usage details as "OS Provision Service, CentOS."</p> </li> <li>Ubuntu               <p>The started virtual server is shown in the usage details as "OS Provision Service, Ubuntu."</p> </li> </ul> |

## How to Use This Service

Perform the following operations to import the image on the migration source virtual server to K5 IaaS.

Figure 20: How to Use the Virtual Server Import Service



## 2.1.8.2 Procedure on the Migration Source Virtual Environment

### 2.1.8.2.1 Migrating an Image of Windows Server OS

The following explains the steps required for migrating an image to a K5 IaaS environment when the OS of the virtual server that is operating in the virtual environment is Windows Server.

#### Before you begin

The procedure explained below applies when the OS that you are migrating is one of the following versions:

- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Server 2012 R2

#### About this task

Perform the following steps in the virtual environment and on the OS of the virtual server from which you are migrating the image.



Important

- Use the console of the virtual environment for operation. Do not connect from outside, such as by using remote desktop, because doing so affects the network settings.  
Example: Start and operate the virtual machine console from VMware vSphere Client.
- Be sure to make a backup before you change the settings of the virtual environment from which you are migrating so that you can restore it.

#### Procedure

1. Uninstallation of VMware Tools

If VMware Tools is installed on the virtual server that you intend to migrate, uninstall it. For the uninstallation procedure, refer to the VMware Tools manuals.

## 2. Enabling of remote desktop

Enable remote desktop in order to connect to the virtual server by using remote desktop after the image is migrated to the K5 IaaS environment. For the procedure to enable the setting, check topics related to the Remote Desktop settings in Windows Help and Support.

After enabling the setting, confirm that you can log in to the server by using remote desktop.

## 3. Setting of network (DHCP connection)

Start [Network connection] from the desktop and check the DHCP settings.



Note

When the settings are configured so that DHCP is not used (the fixed IP address is used), the settings are changed after importing the image so that DHCP is used.

## 4. Disabling of the firewall function

Open the [Windows Firewall] settings from Control Panel, and disable the firewall.



Note

If a third-party firewall product is installed, disable the firewall according to the procedure in the product manual.

## 5. Downloading of agent software

Download the installation module for the agent software from the portal site. After the download finishes, transfer it to a directory on the virtual server.

## 6. Installing of agent software

Install the agent software according to the procedure that is described in [Installing Agent Software for Migration](#) on page 50.

# 2.1.8.2.2 Installing Agent Software for Migration

---

Install the agent software that automatically configures the settings required in order for the OS which you are migrating to operate on K5 IaaS. The software also sets up the related software automatically.

## Before you begin

---

- Confirm that the steps that are described in [Migrating an Image of Windows Server OS](#) on page 49 have been completed.
- Download the installation package (TransportAgent.msi) from the distribution site.

## About this task

---

Install the software according to the procedure described below when the OS that you are migrating is one of the following:

- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Server 2012 R2

## Procedure

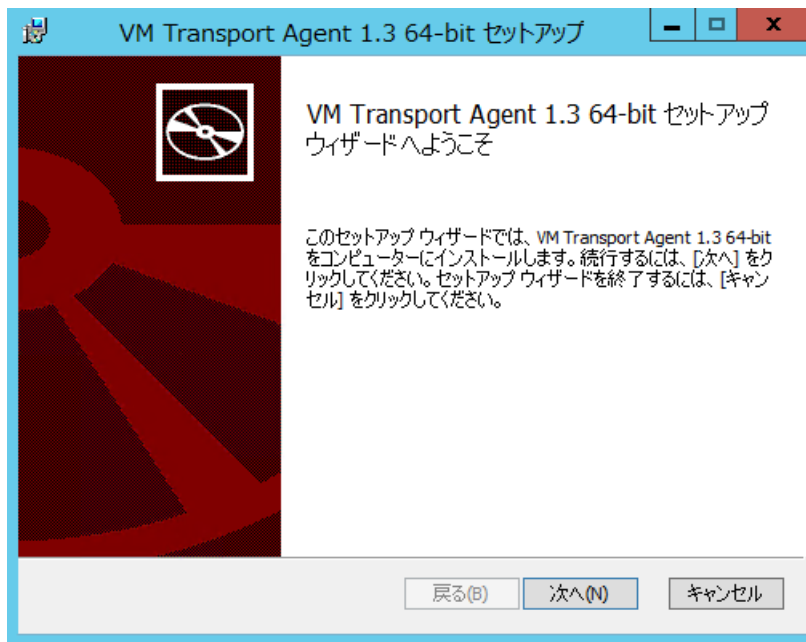
---

### 1. Installation of VM Transport Agent

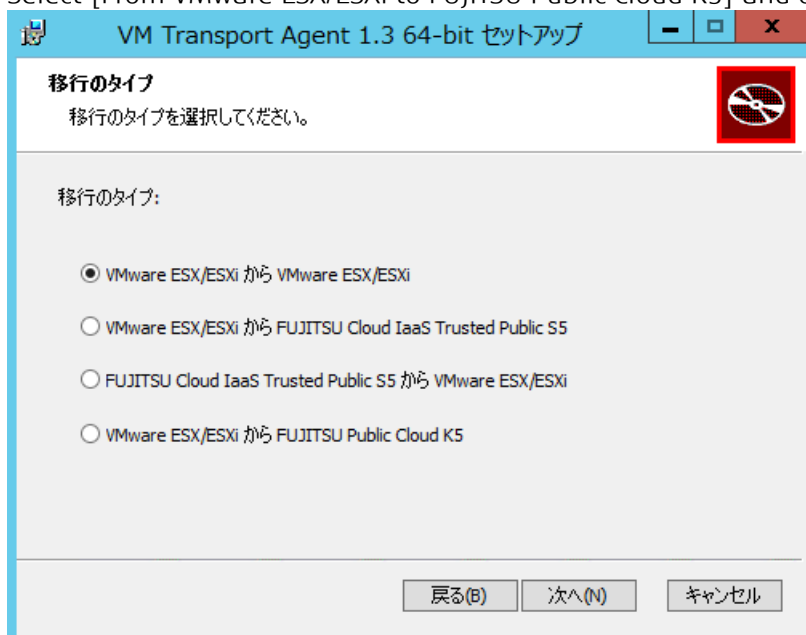
Execute TransportAgent.msi.

### 2. Starting of an installation

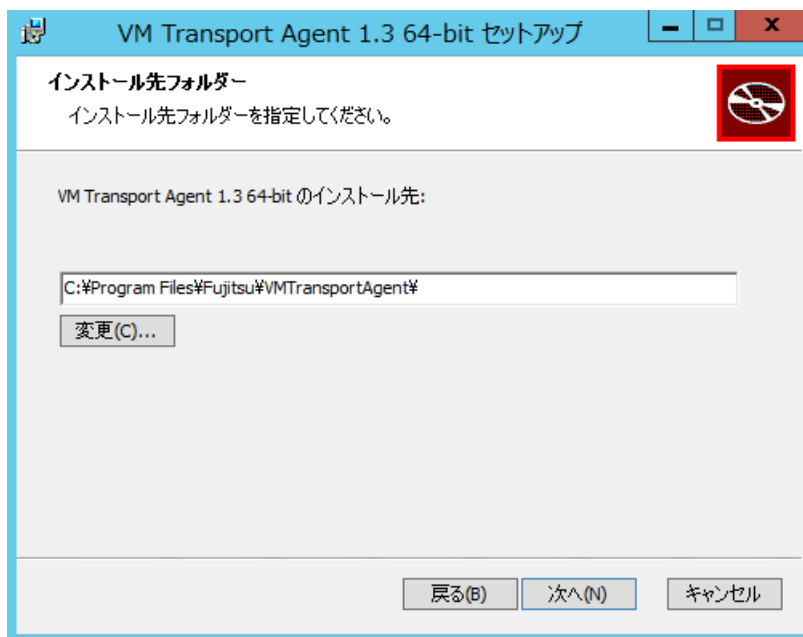
When the setup wizard appears, click the [Next] button.



3. Selection of the combination of migration source and destination  
Select [From VMware ESX/ESXi to FUJITSU Public Cloud K5] and click the [Next] button.



4. Selection of the installation destination for the agent software  
Click the [Change] button to select the installation destination, and then click the [Next] button.



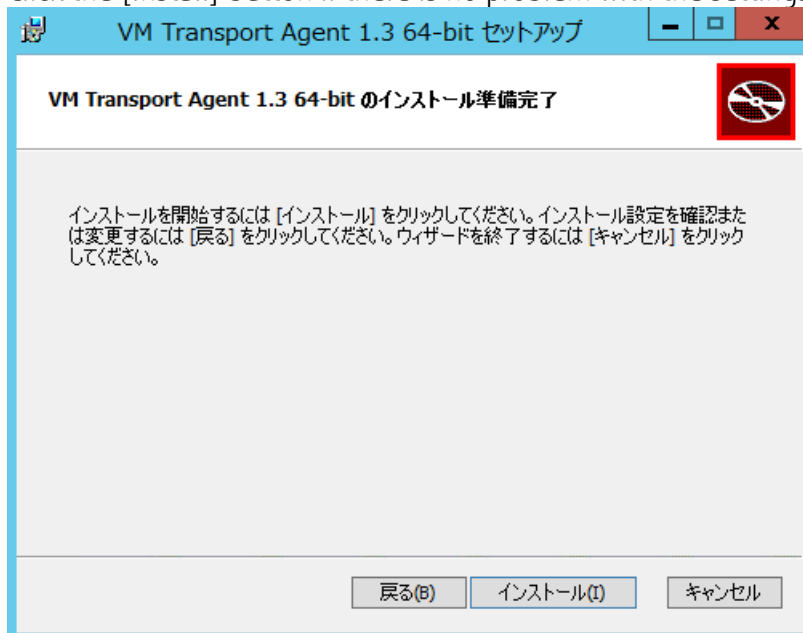
Tip

The default installation destination is as shown below. If you do not need to change it, click the [Next] button.

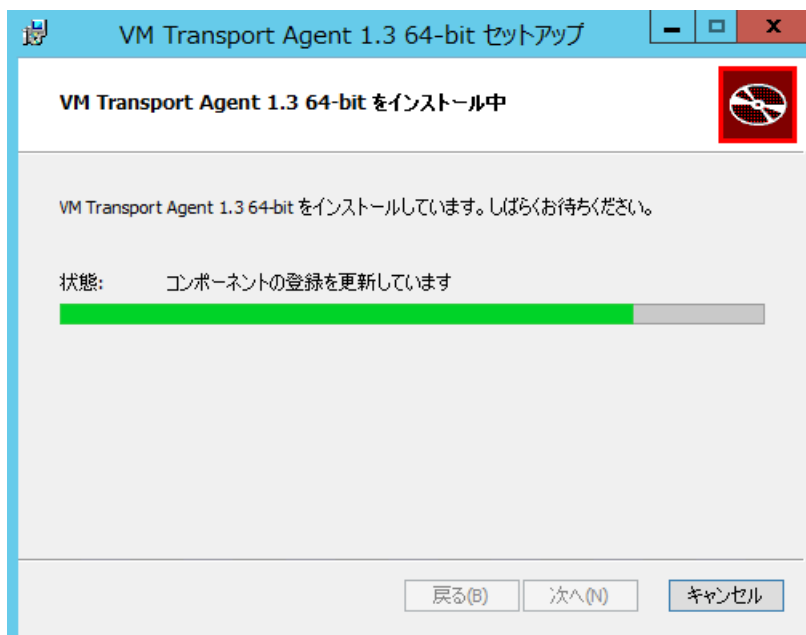
C:\Program Files\Fujitsu\VMTransportAgent

##### 5. Checking of the final confirmation screen

Click the [Install] button if there is no problem with the settings.

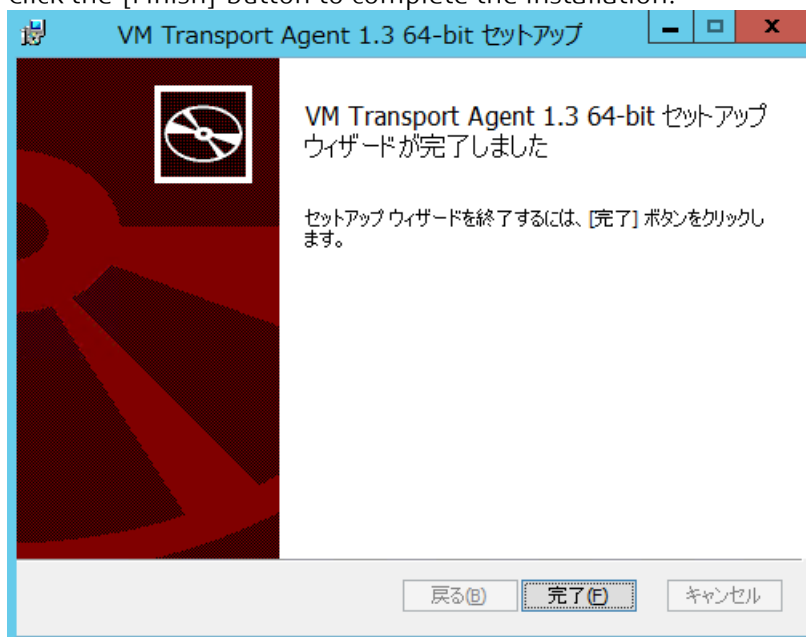


The screen that shows the progress appears. Wait a while for the installation to be completed.



## 6. Checking of the completion screen

Click the [Finish] button to complete the installation.



### 2.1.8.2.3 Migrating an Image of CentOS

The following explains the steps required for migrating an image to a K5 IaaS environment when the OS of the virtual server that is operating in the migration source virtual environment is CentOS.

#### About this task

Perform the following steps in the virtual environment and on the OS of the virtual server from which you are migrating the image.



Important

- Use the console of the virtual environment for operation. Do not connect from outside, such as by using remote desktop, because doing so affects the network settings.

Example: Start and operate the virtual machine console from VMware vSphere Client.

- Be sure to make a backup before you change the settings of the virtual environment from which you are migrating so that you can restore it.

---

## Procedure

### 1. Uninstallation of VMware Tools

If VMware Tools is installed on the virtual server that you intend to migrate, uninstall it.

```
# vmware-uninstall-tools.pl
```

### 2. Installation of an SSH server

Install an SSH server by following the procedure below.

```
# yum install openssh-server
# chkconfig sshd on
# /etc/init.d/sshd restart
```

### 3. Installation of cloud-init

Install cloud-init by following the procedure below.

#### 1. Installation of cloud-init

```
# yum install http://download.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/6/x86_64/epel-release-6-8.noarch.rpm
# yum -y install cloud-init.noarch cloud-utils-growpart
# yum -y install dracut-modules-growroot
```

#### 2. Editing of cloud-init configuration file "/etc/cloud/cloud.cfg"

An example configuration is shown below.

```
# cat /etc/cloud/cloud.cfg
users:
  - default

disable_root: 1
ssh_pwauth: 1

locale_configfile: /etc/sysconfig/i18n
mount_default_fields: [~, ~, 'auto', 'defaults,nofail', '0', '2' ]
resize_rootfs_tmp: /dev
ssh_deletekeys: 0
ssh_genkeytypes: ~
syslog_fix_perms: ~
hostname: localhost.localdomain
manage_etc_hosts: cloud-init_host
user: vmimport

cloud_init_modules:
  - migrator
  - bootcmd
  - write-files
<--omitted-->
system_info:
  default_user:
    name: centos
    lock_passwd: true
    gecos: Cloud User
    groups: [wheel, adm]
    sudo: ["ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:ALL"]
    shell: /bin/bash
  distro: rhel
  paths:
    cloud_dir: /var/lib/cloud
    templates_dir: /etc/cloud/templates
  ssh_svcname: sshd
# vim:syntax=yaml
```

Example of setting the host:

- hostname: <host name>
- manage\_etc\_hosts: cloud-init\_host

Example of specifying a general user name that connects via SSH:

- user: <user name>



Important

The user password that you specified for cloud-init and the created key pair are set for this user when you create a virtual server.

#### 4. Setting of the output destination of the boot log

Change the setting so that the Kernel can write the boot logs to the ttyS0 device.

##### 1. Save /boot/grub/grub.conf.

```
# cp -p /boot/grub/grub.conf /root/grub.conf.bak
```

##### 2. Edit /boot/grub/grub.conf and add the definition that enables the Kernel to write boot logs to the ttyS0 device to grub.

```
# vi /boot/grub/grub.conf
```

Add or change the serial definition as shown below:

```
(Before) kernel /vmlinuz<string omitted> rhgb quiet
(After) kernel /vmlinuz<string omitted> console=tty0
console=ttyS0,115200n8
```

#### 5. Setting of network (DHCP connection)



Tip

To connect a virtual server via a network using DHCP after importing the image, configure the settings shown below. When the fixed IP address is set, the same IP address is used for startup after importing the image.

##### 1. Enable NetworkManager.

```
# yum -y install NetworkManager
# chkconfig NetworkManager on
# /etc/rc.d/init.d/NetworkManager start
```

##### 2. Check the setting of /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-<network interface name>.

```
BOOTPROTO=dhcp
```

##### 3. Restart the network.

```
# /etc/rc.d/init.d/NetworkManager restart
```

#### 6. Deletion of the MAC address

##### 1. Save the configuration file.

If no settings file exists, proceed to step 7.

```
# cp /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules \
/etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules.bak
# cp /lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules \
/lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules.bak
```

##### 2. Delete the MAC address information.

```
# rm /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules
# rm /lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules
# touch /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules
# touch /lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules
```

##### 3. Delete the MAC address information (the line that starts with "HWADDR=") from /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-<network interface name>.

##### 4. Restart the OS.

```
# reboot
```

## 7. Disabling of the firewall

Disable the iptables service and the ipchains service.

```
# service ipchains stop
# service iptables stop
# chkconfig ipchains off
# chkconfig iptables off
```

### 2.1.8.2.4 Migrating an Image of Ubuntu

The following explains the steps required for migrating an image to a K5 IaaS environment when the OS of the virtual server that is operating in the migration source virtual environment is Ubuntu.

#### About this task

Perform the following steps in the virtual environment and on the OS of the virtual server from which you are migrating the image.



Important

- Use the console of the virtual environment for operation. Do not connect from outside, such as by using remote desktop, because doing so affects the network settings.  
Example: Start and operate the virtual machine console from VMware vSphere Client.
- Be sure to make a backup before you change the settings of the virtual environment from which you are migrating so that you can restore it.

#### Procedure

##### 1. Uninstallation of VMware Tools

If VMware Tools is installed on the virtual server that you intend to migrate, uninstall it.

```
# vmware-uninstall-tools.pl
```

##### 2. Installation of an SSH server

Install an SSH server by following the procedure below.

```
# apt-get install openssh-server
```



Tip

Configure the SSH service settings as necessary.

##### 3. Installation of cloud-init

Install cloud-init by following the procedure below.

###### 1. Installation of cloud-init

```
# apt-get install cloud-init
# dpkg-reconfigure cloud-init
```

###### 2. Editing of cloud-init configuration file "/etc/cloud/cloud.cfg"

An example configuration is shown below.

```
# cat /etc/cloud/cloud.cfg
users:
  - default

disable_root: 1
ssh_pwauth: 1

locale_configfile: /etc/sysconfig/i18n
mount_default_fields: [~, ~, 'auto', 'defaults,nofail', '0', '2' ]
resize_rootfs_tmp: /dev
ssh_deletekeys: 0
```

```
ssh_genkeytypes: ~
syslog_fix_perms: ~
hostname: localhost.localdomain
manage_etc_hosts: cloud-init_host
user: vmimport

cloud_init_modules:
- migrator
- bootcmd
- write-files
<--omitted-->
system_info:
  default_user:
    name: centos
    lock_passwd: true
    gecos: Cloud User
    groups: [wheel, adm]
    sudo: ["ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:ALL"]
    shell: /bin/bash
  distro: rhel
  paths:
    cloud_dir: /var/lib/cloud
    templates_dir: /etc/cloud/templates
  ssh_svcname: sshd
# vim:syntax=yaml
```

Example of setting the host:

- hostname: <host name>
- manage\_etc\_hosts: cloud-init\_host

Example of specifying a general user name that connects via SSH:

- user: <user name>



Important

The user password that you specified for cloud-init and the created key pair are set for this user when you create a virtual server.

#### 4. Setting of the output destination of the boot log

Change the setting so that the Kernel can write the boot logs to the ttyS0 device.

1. Save /etc/default/grub and add the definition that enables the Kernel to write boot logs to the ttyS0 device to grub.

```
# cp -p /etc/default/grub /root/grub.bak
# vi /etc/default/grub
```

Add the following settings to grub:

```
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX_DEFAULT=console=tty0 console=ttyS0,115200
GRUB_TERMINAL=console
```

2. Execute the following command to apply the settings:

```
# update-grub
```

#### 5. Setting of network (DHCP connection)



Tip

To connect a virtual server via a network using DHCP after importing the image, configure the settings shown below. When the fixed IP address is set, the same IP address is used for startup after importing the image.

Using the network interface definition defined in /etc/network/interfaces, configure the settings so that the DHCP connection is used.

```
# vim /etc/network/interfaces
```

An example of setting eth0 is as follows:

```
auto eth0
```

```
iface eth0 inet dhcp
```

## 6. Deletion of the MAC address

1. Save the configuration file. If no configuration file exists, this operation is not required.

```
# cp /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules \  
/etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules.bak  
# cp /lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules \  
/lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules.bak
```

2. Delete the MAC address information.

```
# rm /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules  
# rm /lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules  
# touch /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules  
# touch /lib/udev/rules.d/75-persistent-net-generator.rules
```

## 7. Disabling of the firewall

1. Install iptables-persistent with the following command:

```
# apt-get install iptables-persistent
```

2. Initialize the iptables settings and make the settings persistent.

```
# iptables -F  
# /etc/init.d/iptables-persistent save
```

## 2.1.8.2.5 Capturing Images of a Virtual Server

You can capture virtual server images in ovf-format from the migration source environment.

### About this task

For the procedure to capture images in ovf-format, refer to the manuals for the migration source environment.

Example: Taking an image by using VMware vSphere Client

1. Select the VM of which you intend to capture an image.
2. Select [File] > [Export] > [Export OVF Template] from the menu.
3. Specify the export destination directory and press the [OK] button to capture an image.

## 2.1.8.3 Procedure on the K5 IaaS Environment

### 2.1.8.3.1 Transferring Images

Register images that you have captured in the migration source virtual environment as K5 IaaS images by using the object storage service.

### Before you begin

In order to use the object storage service, you need a user who can create and delete containers and objects.

### About this task

Create a container to store images using the object storage service, and then upload the image files that you have taken.



Note

When the size of the image files is 5 GB or less, you can perform a batch upload. When the size is greater than 5 GB, you must divide and upload them separately.



Warning

Be aware that usage charges for the amount that has been uploaded are applied from the point when the upload to object storage started.

## 2.1.8.3.2 Virtual Server Image Import Function

This function allows you to register image files stored in object storage as K5 IaaS virtual server images so that they are available to create servers.

### Virtual Server Image Registration Function

To request the registration of a virtual server image, specify the following information.

Table 38: Registering a Virtual Server Image (List of Items)

| Item                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Required |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Image Name                  | Specify an image name to identify the image in the image archiving service.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Yes      |
| Image File Storage Location | Specify part of the object storage URL where you uploaded the virtual server image as a source, in the following format:<br>"/v1/AUTH_<Project ID>/<Container Name>/<Object Name>"                                                                                                                                                                          | Yes      |
| Checksum Value              | Specify the SHA1 checksum value if you choose to verify the source virtual server image file. If you do not specify this value, the system does not carry out the checksum verification.                                                                                                                                                                    |          |
| Image ID                    | Specify the uuid for the image to be registered.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Yes      |
| Minimum Memory Space        | Specify the minimum memory space (MB) required in order to use the image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Minimum Disk Space          | Specify the minimum disk space (GB) required in order to use the image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| Metadata for the Image      | Specify the metadata (Key-Value) for the image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |          |
| Image Conversion Flag       | Specify "true" <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>For Windows images<br/>The drivers that are necessary for operation after the transition are embedded, and the conversion from the "vmdk" format to the "raw" format is performed.</li><li>For Linux images<br/>The conversion from the "vmdk" format to the "raw" format only is performed.</li></ul> | Yes      |
| OS Type                     | Specify one of the following OS types for the source virtual server image: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>win2008R2SE: Windows Server 2008 R2 SE</li><li>win2008R2EE: Windows Server 2008 R2 EE</li><li>win2012SE: Windows Server 2012 SE</li><li>win2012R2SE: Windows Server 2012 R2 SE</li><li>centos: CentOS</li><li>ubuntu: Ubuntu</li></ul>     | Yes      |
| User Name                   | Specify the name of the user who imports the image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |
| Password                    | Specify the password (a Base64-encoded character string) for the user who imports the image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |

| Item        | Description                                                                     | Required |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Domain Name | Specify the name of the domain to which the user who imports the image belongs. | Yes      |

## Acquiring the Registration Status List for Virtual Server Images

Acquire a list of the image registration processes that have been requested for the system within a domain. The list is output starting with the most recent requests to the system. You can also acquire basic status information for each registration process.

- succeeded  
This status indicates that the image was registered successfully.
- failed  
This status indicates that the image registration process failed.
- processing  
This status indicates that the image registration process is in progress.
- queued  
This status indicates that the image registration request is waiting for the process to begin.

## Virtual Server Image Registration Status

Acquire the following detailed information regarding the operation status for one virtual server image registration process:

- Status information of the registration process
- Progress rate (from 0 to 100%)
- Settings you configured when registering the image

## 2.1.9 Virtual Server Export Service

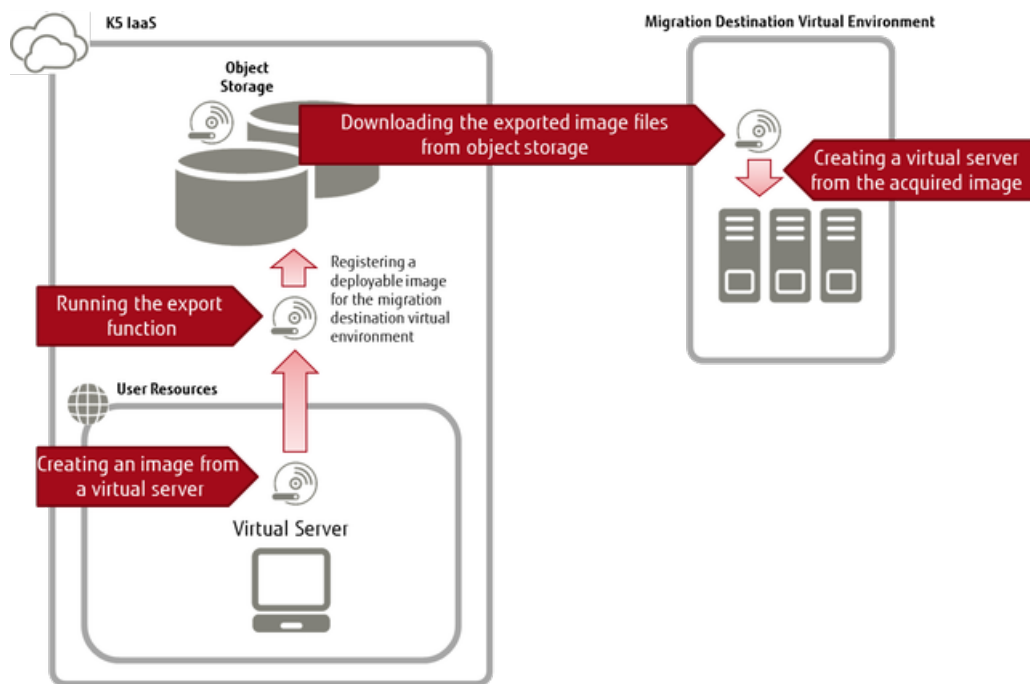
### 2.1.9.1 Overview of Functions

#### 2.1.9.1.1 Virtual Server Export Service

This function allows you to migrate a virtual server running in K5 IaaS to your on-premises environment. Image files are stored in object storage based on the virtual server image that you have created.

A diagram that shows how this service is used is shown below.

Figure 21: Using the Virtual Server Export Service



## Supported Migration Destination Virtual Environments

Table 39: List of Migration Destination Environments

| Virtual Environment | Product and Version                                                                                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VMware              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESX/ESXi 6.0 5.5 5.1 5.0</li> <li>vCenter Server 6.0 5.5 5.1 5.0</li> </ul> |

## Supported Virtual Server Images

Table 40: Availability of Export Process

| Type of Virtual Server Image to Be Exported                                                                                | Availability of Export Process |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Image imported by using the virtual server import service                                                                  | ✓                              |
| Derivative image of the virtual server deployed from an image that was imported by using the virtual server import service | ✓                              |
| Image provided by the OS provision service                                                                                 | -                              |
| Derivative image of the virtual server deployed from an image that was provided by the OS provision service                | -                              |

## Supported Migration Source Guest OS

---

A list of supported migration source guest OS is shown below.

Table 41: List of Migration Source Guest OS

| OS Type | Supported OS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Windows Server 2008 R2 SE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li><li>• Windows Server 2008 R2 EE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li><li>• Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li><li>• Windows Server 2012 R2 SE 64bit (Japanese Version, English Version)</li></ul> |
| Linux   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• CentOS 6.5 64bit</li><li>• Ubuntu 14.04 LTS 64bit</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Functions Included

---

The following functions are provided:

- Virtual Server Image Export Request

You can specify an image created from a virtual server, and make a request to the system for export processing.



Tip

An export request is immediately returned. You can use the "Acquire Export Status" function to determine if the requested export process has been completed.

- Acquire Export Status

You can specify the export ID that was issued during an export request to acquire the export status.

- Acquire Export Status List

You can acquire a list of export statuses.



Tip

- The most recent export requests are acquired first.
- You can only acquire export requests that were made within the project for the token that is used.

- Cancel In-Progress Export Process

You can specify the export ID that was issued during an export request, and request the system to cancel the target export process.



Tip

An export process cancel request is immediately returned. You can use the "Acquire Export Status" function to determine if the requested export process has been canceled.

## Limitations on Migration Source Virtual Server Configurations

---

- Disk Configuration

Only system storage that is on the startup disk can be exported. Additional storage cannot be exported.

## Handling of Licenses

The handling of licenses by type of exported OS is shown below.

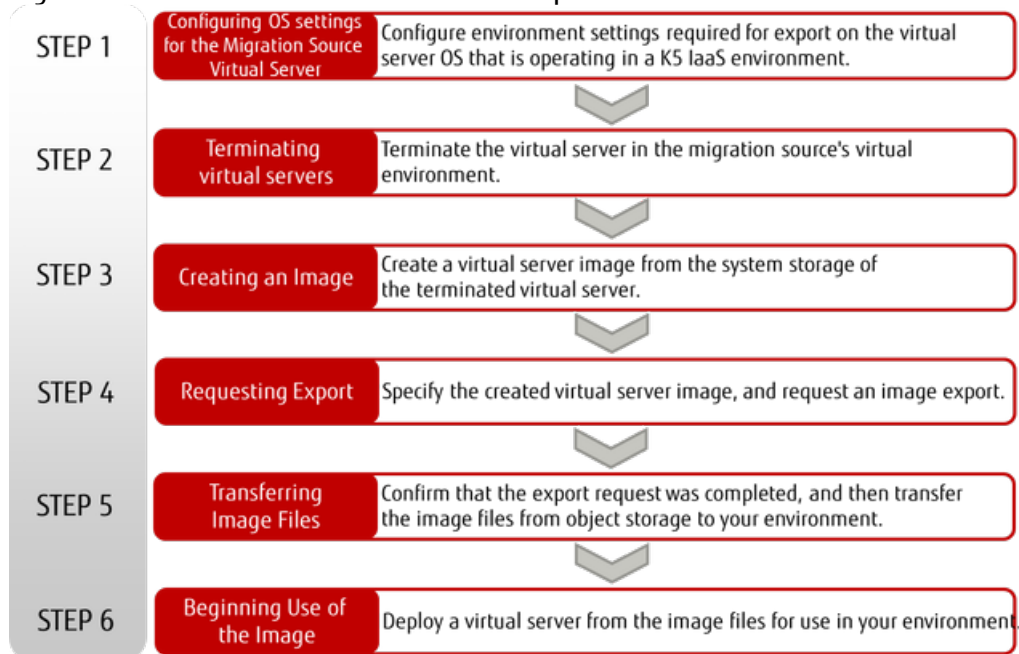
Table 42: Handling of Licenses by Type of Exported OS

| Type of Exported OS | Handling of Licenses                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows             | After exporting is complete, you must remove the SPLA license. Modify the KMS authentication settings according to your environment, and then perform authentication again.                                         |
| Linux               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>CentOS<br/>No license is needed. You can use this software without a license.</li><li>Ubuntu<br/>No license is needed. You can use this software without a license.</li></ul> |

## How to Use This Service

Use the following procedure to export a virtual server image on K5 IaaS.

Figure 22: How to Use the Virtual Server Export Service



### 2.1.9.2 Procedure on the Migration Source Virtual Server

#### 2.1.9.2.1 Configuring Settings on a Virtual Server in Advance

This section describes the settings that must be configured in advance on the virtual server that is targeted for export.

#### About this task

Use the following procedure for the virtual server targeted for export.

## Procedure

1. Logging in to a Virtual Server  
Log in to the virtual server to configure the required settings on the guest OS.
2. Configuring Settings by Guest OS in Advance
  - When the Guest OS is Windows  
If Cloudbase-init is installed, uninstall it.
  - When the Guest OS is Linux  
If Cloud-init is installed, uninstall it.
3. Terminating virtual servers  
Use one of the following methods to terminate the virtual server.
  - Run the shutdown command on the guest OS.
  - Run "Termination of Virtual Server" on the portal or API.

## 2.1.9.3 Procedure on the K5 IaaS Environment

### 2.1.9.3.1 Creating Virtual Server Images

This section describes how to create a virtual server image in order to use the Virtual Server Image Export function for export processes.

#### Before you begin

Complete the [Configuring Settings on a Virtual Server in Advance](#) on page 63.

#### About this task

Use the following procedure to create a virtual server image to be exported.

## Procedure

1. Specify the system storage for the target virtual server.
2. Specify the following parameters and create a virtual server image from the system storage.

Table 43: Parameters Specified when Creating a Virtual Server Image

| Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Required |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Image Name       | Specify a name that identifies the virtual server image<br><div> Tip The specified name is also applied to the virtual server image files after exporting is completed.</div> | ✓        |
| Disk Format      | Specify "raw"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |          |
| Container Format | Specify "bare"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Force Option     | Specify "true"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |

## Results

Export processing is possible if the status of the created virtual server image is "ACTIVE."



Important

Do not delete the created virtual server image until the export process is completed and the virtual server image is stored in object storage as virtual server image files.

### 2.1.9.3.2 Virtual Server Image Export Function

This function allows you to specify a virtual server image created from a virtual server, and make a request to the system for export processing. Further, there is a function for checking the status of the requested export process.

#### Virtual Server Image Export Request Function

To request the export of a virtual server image, specify the following items. If the request is successful, an export ID is issued.

Table 44: Exporting a Virtual Server Image (List of Items)

| Item                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                        | Required |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Image ID                                        | Specify the image ID assigned to the export source virtual server.                                                                                                                 | ✓        |
| Export Destination Container for Object Storage | Specify the object storage container where exported virtual server images are stored. Use the following format:<br><code>/v1/AUTH_&lt;Project ID&gt;/&lt;Container Name&gt;</code> | ✓        |



Note

- Image IDs other than for projects registered by the user operating this function cannot be specified.
- You cannot specify the same image ID and the same export destination object storage container when making multiple export requests.
- If image files (including separated files) with image names identical to the ones set for the image ID already exist in the object storage container that is the export destination, an export request is not possible.

#### Acquire Export Status List Function

This function acquires a list of virtual server image export processing that can be referenced in the project scope of the token. You can specify the following items and make changes to the range of acquisition.

Table 45: List of Virtual Server Image Export Statuses (List of Setting Items)

| Item            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Required |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Start Position  | Specify the first index where list acquisition starts.<br> Tip If this setting is omitted, the most recently requested export process is returned. |          |
| Number Acquired | Specify the number of records acquired in the list.<br> Tip If this setting is omitted, all export processes are returned. (Maximum 200 records)   |          |

You can also acquire basic status information for each export process.

- succeeded  
This status indicates that the export process was completed successfully.
- failed  
This status indicates that the export process failed.
- processing  
This status indicates that the export is being processed.
- queued  
This status indicates that the export process is queued.
- canceling  
This status indicates that the export is being canceled.
- canceled  
This status indicates that the export has been canceled.

## Acquire Export Status Function

You can specify an export ID and acquire detailed information regarding the export processing status for a single virtual server image export process.

- Information about the status of the export process
- Progress rate (from 0 to 100%)
- Information about the settings when the export process was requested
- Date/time when the export process request was received

## Cancel In-Progress Export Process Function

You can specify an export ID and request the cancellation of a single virtual server image export process.



Note

- Cancellation can be requested only if the status of the export process is incomplete.
- You cannot register multiple cancellation requests for the same export ID.
- Once a cancellation request has been registered, it cannot be canceled.

You can use the Acquire Export Status function to check the cancel status of an export process. However, this function operates as indicated below, depending on the status and progress rate of the export process.

**Table 46: Cancel Request Status and Estimated Standby Time until Cancellation is Completed**

| Cancel Request Status                        | Estimated Standby Time until Cancellation is Completed                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Status: queued                               | 5 minutes                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Status: processing<br>Progress rate: 0 - 10  | 20 minutes                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Status: processing<br>Progress rate: 11 - 40 | Varies based on image size (approximately 6 hours for 300 GB)<br> Canceled when the progress rate reaches 40.<br>Tip |
| Status: processing                           | Varies based on image size (approximately 1 hour for 300 GB)                                                                                                                                            |

| Cancel Request Status                        | Estimated Standby Time until Cancellation is Completed                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Progress rate: 41 - 70                       |  Canceled when the progress rate reaches 70.<br>Tip                                                                  |
| Status: processing<br>Progress rate: 71 - 95 | Varies based on image size (approximately 2 hours for 300 GB)<br> Canceled when the progress rate reaches 95.<br>Tip |

### 2.1.9.3.3 Transferring Image Files

Image files for which the export process is completed are stored in object storage. In order to use them in your environment, acquire the image files from object storage and transfer them to the migration destination environment.

#### About this task

Image files are stored in object storage under the following conditions.

- Image files (objects) are stored with the "Image Name" + ".vmdk." Image Name is a name specified when the image was created from the virtual server system storage.
- An ".ovf" file and an ".mf" file are also stored in the same container where the image files (objects) are stored.
- Image files (objects) are divided and uploaded separately.
- Divided files are stored in a different container with the name "Container Name" + "\_segments."



Note

If one or more divided files are deleted by accident, you will be unable to use the corresponding image files.

Use the following procedure to acquire exported image files.

#### Procedure

1. Receive authorization to access the object storage where image files are stored.
2. Specify the following parameters to acquire image files from object storage.
  - Project ID
  - Container name where exported image files are stored
  - Names of exported image files
3. Acquire the ".ovf" file and the ".mf" file at the same time.

#### Results

Confirm that all image files, the ".ovf" file, and the ".mf" file were acquired successfully. At this time, the ".ovf" file is configured to start the virtual server with the minimal settings. Therefore, make the necessary modifications before transferring the files to your environment.

- Configuring the number of CPUs (Changing the VirtualQuantity value)

```
<Item>
  <rasd:AllocationUnits>hertz * 10^6</rasd:AllocationUnits>
  <rasd:Description>Number of Virtual CPUs</rasd:Description>
  <rasd:ElementName>1 virtual CPU(s)</rasd:ElementName>
  <rasd:InstanceID>1</rasd:InstanceID>
  <rasd:ResourceType>3</rasd:ResourceType>
```

```
<rasd:VirtualQuantity>1</rasd:VirtualQuantity>
</Item>
```

- Configuring the memory size (Changing the VirtualQuantity value)

```
<Item>
  <rasd:AllocationUnits>byte * 2^20</rasd:AllocationUnits>
  <rasd:Description>Memory Size</rasd:Description>
  <rasd:ElementName>512MB of memory</rasd:ElementName>
  <rasd:InstanceID>2</rasd:InstanceID>
  <rasd:ResourceType>4</rasd:ResourceType>
  <rasd:VirtualQuantity>512</rasd:VirtualQuantity>
</Item>
```



Tip

Table 47: List of OS Configured in ".ovf" Files

| OS Type                |                                                                        |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows Server 2008 R2 | <OperatingSystemSection ovf:id="1" vmw:osType="windows7Server64Guest"> |
| Windows Server 2012 R2 | <OperatingSystemSection ovf:id="1" vmw:osType="windows8Server64Guest"> |
| CentOS                 | <OperatingSystemSection ovf:id="107">                                  |
| Ubuntu                 | <OperatingSystemSection ovf:id="94">                                   |

## What to do next

When the acquisition of image files and the acquisition and editing of ".ovf" and ".mf" files are completed, transfer them to your virtual environment.

Billing continues based on the amount of use of images created as export sources registered in the image archiving service, and image files that have been exported. After confirming that normal operation occurs in your environment, do not forget to delete any files that are no longer needed.

## 2.1.9.4 Procedure on the Migration Destination Customer's Environment

### 2.1.9.4.1 Deploying Virtual Server Images

Use OVF image files (.vmdk, .ovf, .mf) acquired from a K5 IaaS environment to deploy a virtual server in your virtual environment.

## About this task

For more information about how to deploy a virtual server, refer to the VMware manuals.

Example: Deploying a virtual machine by using VMware vSphere Client

1. Select [File] > [Deploy OVF Template] from the menu.
2. Specify the acquired OVF image files, and click the [OK] button.

The setting status for the deployed virtual server is as indicated below.

**Table 48: Setting Status for a Virtual Server Deployed to a VMware Environment**

| Settings | Status                                                                                       |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Account  | The account that was set during virtual server import can be used (including the root user). |
| Network  | DHCP enabled, MAC address not set                                                            |
| Firewall | Disabled                                                                                     |



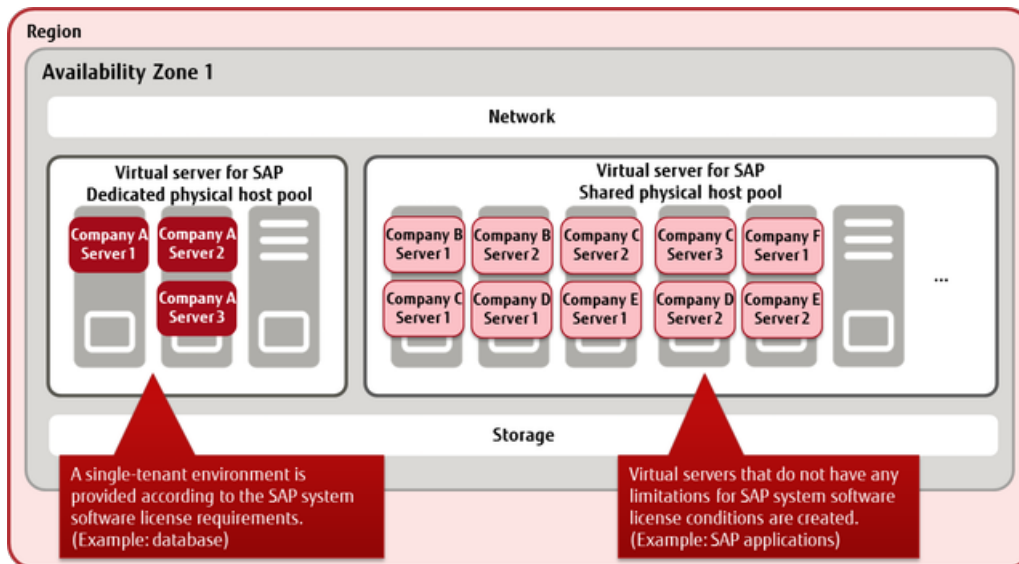
Tip The above items are set automatically when importing. Adjust these settings as required when exporting.

## 2.2 Services for SAP

### 2.2.1 Virtual Server for SAP

#### 2.2.1.1 Virtual Server for SAP

Virtual servers can be created for SAP applications as virtual environments supported by SAP.



### Functions Included

- Compute
  - Enabling/disabling of an environment

Specify a project and availability zone, and set whether to enable the virtual server for SAP environment.

**Note** If you disable this environment, you must delete all created virtual servers for SAP, images, and network resources in the project.
- A virtual server for SAP
  - Creating/deleting a virtual server for SAP
  - Startup/termination of a virtual server for SAP
  - Restarting a virtual server for SAP
  - Acquiring information for a virtual server for SAP
- OS provision service

Use the images provided in [List of Available OS](#) to create a virtual server for SAP.

You can use Windows Server Update Services and Windows Activation (KMS), which are common network services.
- Software support service

The available functions and charge systems comply with [Compute] > [Standard Services] > [Software Support Services].
- Auto recovery of a virtual server



Note You cannot select whether to enable or disable the auto recovery function. (Always enabled)

- Image management

Create private images from an existing virtual server for SAP and delete private images that have been created.



Tip A private image that has been created can be used only in the activity zone in which it was created.

Choose to disclose a created private image either within the project or within the domain.

- Storage

- System storage

System storage is provided as a system region for starting the OS. The size of system storage is determined according to the OS image selected in the OS provision service.

Table 49: List of System Storage Sizes (Eastern Japan Region 1, Western Japan Region 2)

| OS Type | OS Provided                                         | Size  |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Windows | Windows Server 2012 SE R2 64bit English Version     | 80 GB |
|         | Windows Server 2008 SE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | 80 GB |

Table 50: List of System Storage Sizes (UK Region 1)

| OS Type | OS Provided                                         | Size   |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Windows | Windows Server 2012 SE R2 64bit English Version     | 180 GB |
|         | Windows Server 2008 SE R2 SP1 64bit English Version | 180 GB |

- Additional storage

Additional storage is provided for data archiving.

Table 51: List of Limiting Values Related to Additional Storage

| Item                       | Limiting Values |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Size of Additional Storage | 0.1 - 2,048 GB  |
| Number of Storage Systems  | 1 - 55          |

- Snapshot function

This function is used to take, restore, and delete snapshots for existing virtual servers for SAP.



If you delete a virtual server for SAP in which snapshots are taken, the snapshots will also be deleted.

Note

Table 52: List of Limiting Values Related to Snapshots

| Item                      | Limiting Values        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Number of Snapshots Taken | Maximum 10 generations |

- Network

- Network resource management

For virtual networks and subnets that have been created, you can assign and release network resources for the virtual server for the SAP environment.



**Tip** You can use private IP addresses and gateway IP addresses by assigning network resources.

- Adding/deleting ports



**Note**

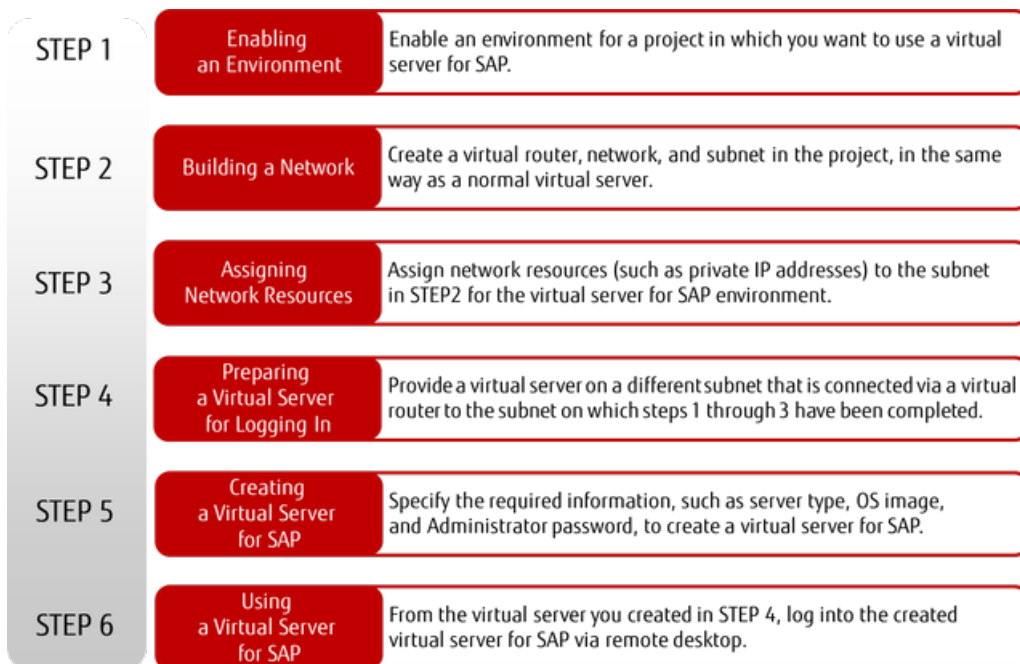
- If you add or delete ports, also modify the network adapter settings on the OS as appropriate.
- You cannot use security group functions.

Table 53: List of Limiting Values Related to Adding a Port

| Item                              | Limiting Values |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| Number of Ports that Can Be Added | 1 - 9           |

## How to Use This Service

Figure 23: How to Use a Virtual Server for SAP



## Points to Note

- An auto-scaling function is not provided.

- A virtual server import function is not provided.
- You cannot assign a global IP address to a virtual server for SAP. Use the service via a normal virtual server.
- Only a virtual server for SAP can be created in a subnet that has had its settings modified for use with a virtual server for SAP. A normal virtual server cannot be created.
- A virtual server for SAP cannot be targeted for a load balancer to distribute the load.
- This server cannot be created with a template.
- If a physical host in a data center experiences an abnormality, the virtual server for SAP running on the target host is automatically migrated. During this migration, access to the target virtual server and business applications will be temporarily suspended.

## 2.2.1.2 Preparing the Virtual Server for SAP Environment

To start operations on a virtual server for SAP, you must prepare a connection with the existing virtual resource environment.

Before creating a virtual server for SAP, make the preparations as shown below.

### Enabling of an Environment

Enable an environment for a project in which you want to use a virtual server for SAP.

Table 54: Enabling of an Environment (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Required |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Project ID             | Specify the existing project ID                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |
| Availability Zone Name | Specify the name of the availability zone where the environment will be enabled<br><br> If this setting is omitted, all the availability zone names will be set by the system.<br><small>Tip</small> |          |



Do not enable and disable the same project at the same time.

Note

### Building a Virtual Network

To connect the environment for a virtual server for SAP with an existing virtual resource environment, create the following virtual network resources:

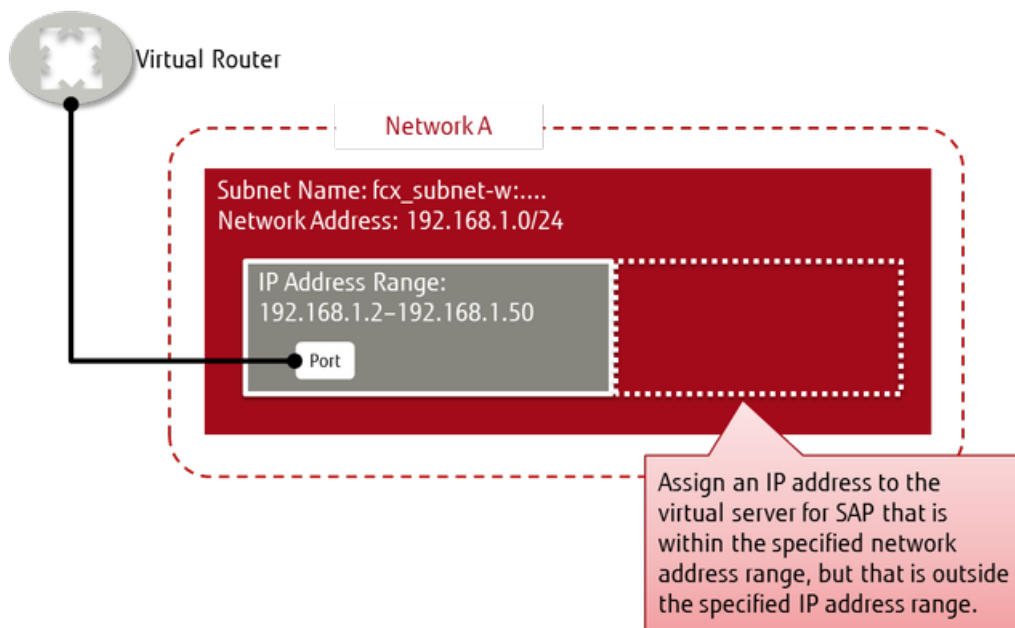
- Virtual router
- Virtual network and a subnet that belongs to the virtual network



Important

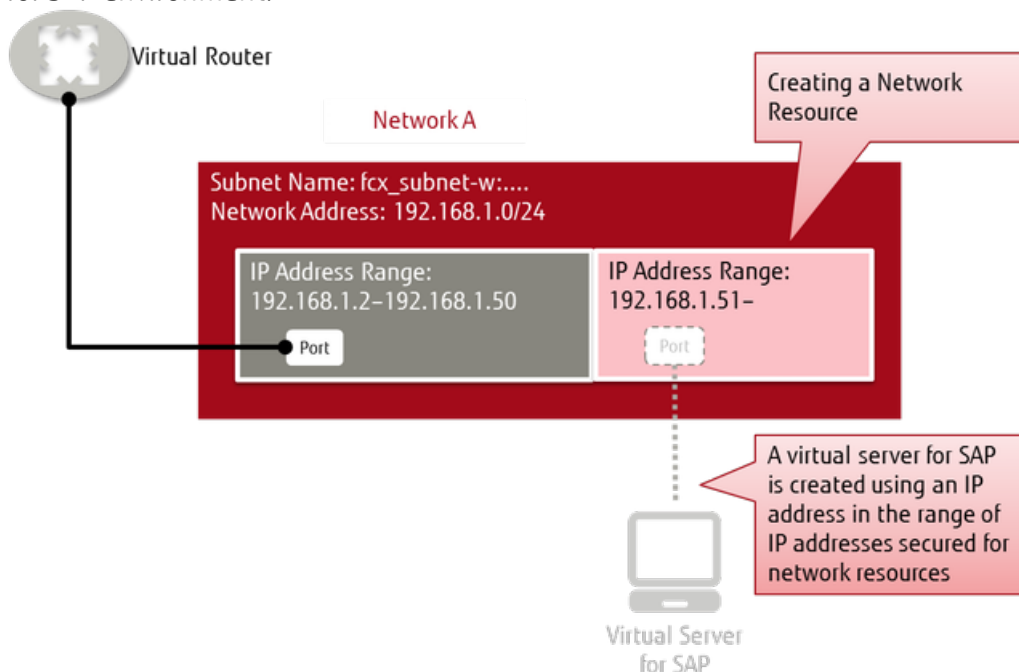
The subnet that will be created for a virtual server for SAP must meet the following conditions:

- No normal virtual servers are connected
- The subnet name starts with the prefix "fcx\_subnet-w:"
- The CIDR range specified as network addresses is larger than the specification of the IP address range (secure a network resource range described later)



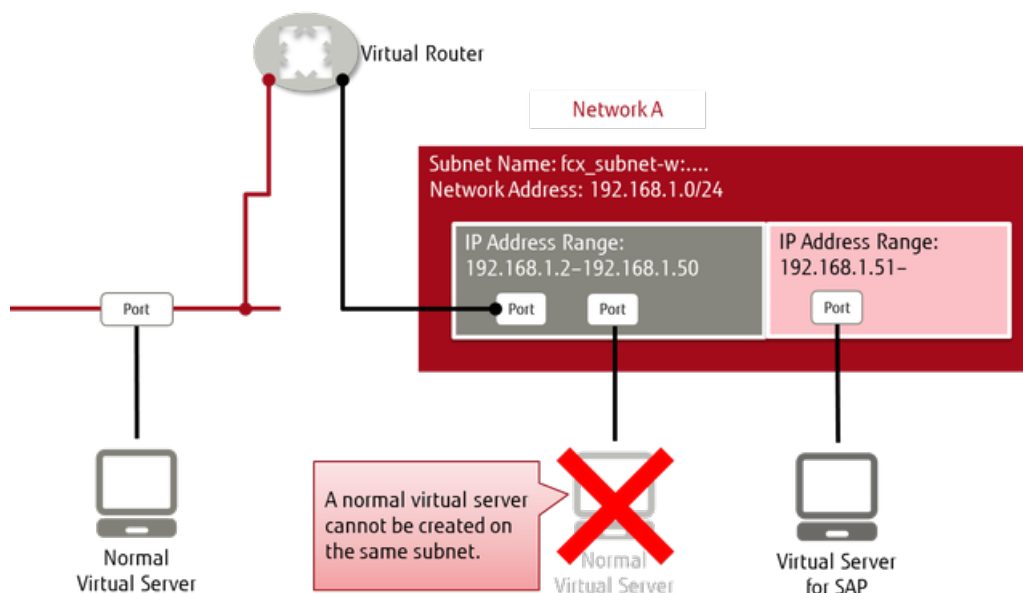
## Creating a Network Resource

Create a network resource by assigning the subnet that has been created for the virtual server for SAP environment.



## Preparing a Virtual Server Used for Logging In

When network resources are assigned to the subnet created for the virtual server for SAP environment, you cannot create normal virtual servers on the same subnet. Therefore, prepare a different network and a subnet, and connect to them via a virtual router, as shown below.



### 2.2.1.3 Creating/Deleting a Virtual Server for SAP

You can create a virtual server for SAP according to the requirements and purposes of the SAP applications by selecting from several types. You can also delete virtual servers for SAP that are in use at any time if they are no longer needed.

#### Creating a Virtual Server for SAP

You can create a virtual server for SAP from one of the image types explained below.

- Standard  
Image provided in [Virtual Server for SAP \(List of Available OS\)](#)
- Created by the user  
Image prepared through [management of the virtual server image](#)

To create a virtual server for SAP, specify the following items.



**Tip** The virtual server enters a "shut-down" state immediately after it is created. Start the virtual server for SAP as necessary.

Table 55: Creating a Virtual Server for SAP (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Required |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Server Name      | Specify the name of the virtual server for SAP. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use an alphanumeric character as the first character</li> <li>• Use alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-), underscores (_), and periods (.)</li> <li>• Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 64 characters</li> </ul> | Yes      |
| Server Type Name | Specify the type name from available server types                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Yes      |
| Image Name       | Use either of the following image names: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Image provided in the list of available OS</li> <li>• Private image that has been created</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |

| Item                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Required |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Port Identification Number                                        | Specify a number that identifies the port that will be assigned to the virtual server for SAP. The number that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter "0" when you create a virtual server</li> <li>• Enter a number in the range from 0 to 9</li> <li>• Enter a sequence number, which must be an integer that starts with 0</li> </ul>                                                                                                            | Yes      |
| Network Resource ID                                               | Specify the ID of the created network resource                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Yes      |
| IP Address                                                        | Specify an IP address that will be assigned to a virtual server for SAP. You can specify an IP address in either of the following two ways: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Directly specify one in xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx format</li> <li>• Automatic (The system automatically assigns one from the IP address range specified for the network resource.)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                        |          |
| Computer Name                                                     | Specify the name of the computer The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use alphanumeric characters and hyphens (-)</li> <li>• Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 15 characters</li> <li>• You cannot specify numeric characters only</li> </ul> <div>  <p>Tip If this setting is omitted, the server name will be applied.</p> </div> |          |
| Administrator Password                                            | Specify the password for the OS Administrator The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use alphanumeric characters and single-byte symbols</li> <li>• Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 128 characters</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Yes      |
| Port Identification Number for which the DNS Server Is Configured | Specify a port identification number for which the DNS server information is configured                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |
| IP Address of the DNS Server                                      | When the OS is Windows, set the IP address specified as the DNS server address of the network adapter <div>  <p>Note If this setting is omitted, the IP address of the DNS server will not be set.</p> </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |
| Availability Zone Name                                            | Specify the name of the availability zone where the virtual server for SAP will be created <div>  <p>Tip If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used.</p> </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| Creation in the Dedicated Area                                    | Specify "true" to create a virtual server for SAP in the dedicated area                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |          |

| Item | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Required |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|      |  <b>Note</b> To create a virtual server for SAP in the dedicated area, you must submit an application to the service provider. |          |

## Deleting a Virtual Server for SAP

Delete a virtual server for SAP that is no longer needed.

 Stop (turn off) the virtual server for SAP before deleting it.

**Note**

## Available Server Types

A list of virtual server types that can be used with virtual servers for SAP is shown below:

Table 56: List of Types of Virtual Server for SAP (Flavors)

| Type Name | Number of Virtual CPUs | Memory (GB) |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| WS-4      | 4                      | 16          |
| WS-8      | 8                      | 32          |
| WS-16     | 16                     | 64          |

 The performance for each virtual CPU is equal to 2.6 GHz.

**Tip**

## List of Available OS

Table 57: List of Available OS of Virtual Server for SAP

| OS Type | OS Provided                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows Server 2012 SE R2 64bit English Version</li> <li>Windows Server 2008 SE R2 SP1 64bit English Version</li> </ul> |

### 2.2.1.4 Operations on a Virtual Server for SAP

Carry out the following operations on a virtual server for SAP that has been created in an SAP service environment.

#### Startup/Termination of a Virtual Server for SAP

Start a created virtual server for SAP from a shut-down state or shut down a server from an operating state. As a shut-down method, you can select either [Shut down forcibly] or [Do not shut down forcibly].

 When a virtual server for SAP starts up, there is no waiting for its OS to start up.

**Note**

## Restarting a Virtual Server for SAP

Restart a running virtual server for SAP. As a restart method, you can select either [Restart forcibly] or [Do not restart forcibly].

## Acquiring Information of Virtual Server for SAP

Obtain detailed information of a created virtual server for SAP. In addition to the items specified when a server is created, you can obtain the following information:

Table 58: Virtual Server for SAP (List of Items That Can Be Acquired)

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Resource ID            | Obtain the resource ID of the target virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                                             |
| Power Status           | Obtain the power status information of the virtual server for SAP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• on</li><li>• off</li><li>• unknown</li></ul>                                                  |
| Snapshot Generations   | Obtain the number of snapshot generations taken for the virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                          |
| Snapshot Date and Time | Obtain the date and time of when snapshots were taken for the virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                    |
| Snapshot ID            | Obtain the ID of the snapshots taken for the virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                                     |
| Storage Name           | Obtain the name of the storage system attached to the virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                            |
| Storage ID             | Obtain the ID of the storage system attached to the virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                              |
| Storage Capacity       | Obtain the capacity (in GB) of the storage system attached to the virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                |
| Device Path            | Obtain the path or identifier of the device connected to the storage system.                                                                                                                             |
| MAC Address            | Obtain the MAC address of the network interface connected to the virtual server for SAP.                                                                                                                 |
| Status                 | Obtain the status information of the virtual server for SAP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• normal</li><li>• warning</li><li>• stop</li><li>• error</li><li>• fatal</li><li>• unknown</li></ul> |

## Attaching Additional Storage

To attach additional storage, specify the following items:

Table 59: Attaching Additional Storage (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Required |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Index Number | Specify the number of the additional storage system. The number that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter an integer from 1 to 55</li><li>• Enter a sequence number, which must start with 1</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |
| Size         | Specify the storage size. The value that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Specify in the range from 0.1 to 2048</li><li>• You can specify a number with up to one decimal place</li><li>• Specify a value in GB</li></ul> <div> Note You can specify a value in an increment of 0.1 GB, but the size may not be recognized as specified, depending on the OS specifications.</div> | Yes      |

## Deleting Additional Storage

When additional storage is no longer necessary, delete it on a virtual server for SAP.



Stop (turn off) the virtual server for SAP before deleting the target.

Note



The index number of a storage system that is not deleted remains the same.

Tip

## Adding a Port

To add a port, specify the following items.



To add a port, you must delete all the snapshots taken on the target virtual server for SAP.

Note



When a port is added successfully, the system assigns the smallest unused number equal to or above 0 to the port as its identification number.

Tip

Table 60: Adding a Port (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Required |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Type                | Specify "nic"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Yes      |
| Network Resource ID | Specify the ID of the network resource to which the port will be connected                                                                                                                                                                        | Yes      |
| IP Address          | Specify an IP address that will be assigned to the port<br><div> If this setting is omitted, an IP address is automatically assigned from the IP address</div> |          |

| Item | Description                                                         | Required |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|      | Tip range available to the network resource that will be connected. |          |

## Deleting a Port

Delete a port that is no longer necessary by specifying the port identification number.



To delete a port, you must delete all the snapshots taken on the target virtual server for SAP.

Table 61: Deleting a Port (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                       | Description                                                        | Required |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Type                       | Specify "nic"                                                      | Yes      |
| Port Identification Number | Specify the identification number of the port that will be deleted | Yes      |



The identification number of a port that is not deleted remains the same.

## Creation of a snapshot

To take a snapshot, specify the following items on a created virtual server for SAP.



Snapshots are taken on a per-virtual server basis.



You can take snapshots while a virtual server for SAP is running, but doing so may affect normal operation of the virtual server for SAP. We recommend that you take snapshots after a virtual server for SAP is stopped.

Table 62: Taking a Snapshot (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                                  | Description                                                                                       | Required |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Type                                  | Specify "snapshot"                                                                                | Yes      |
| Resource ID of Virtual Server for SAP | Specify the resource ID of the target virtual server for SAP of which you want to take a snapshot | Yes      |

## Deleting a Snapshot

Delete a snapshot that is no longer necessary.

Table 63: Deleting a Snapshot (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                    | Description                                                  | Required |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Type                    | Specify "snapshot"                                           | Yes      |
| Resource ID of Snapshot | Specify the resource ID of the snapshot that will be deleted | Yes      |

## Restoring from a Snapshot

Restore a virtual server for SAP from a snapshot.



Restoration is carried out on a per-virtual server basis.

Tip

Table 64: Restoring from a Snapshot (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                    | Description                                                   | Required |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Resource ID of Snapshot | Specify the resource ID of the snapshot that will be restored | Yes      |

## 2.2.1.5 Managing Virtual Server for SAP Images

Create private images from an existing virtual server for SAP and delete private images that have been created.

Private images that have been created can be shared within a contract number (domain) or within a project and used for creation of a new virtual server for SAP.

### Creating a Private Image

To create a private image from the virtual server for SAP that was created, specify the following items.

Table 65: Creating a Private Image (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Required |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Name                                  | Specify a name for the private image. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Specify 32 characters or less using alphanumeric characters and underscores (_)</li><li>Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li><li>The name must be unique within the project</li></ul>                                                      | Yes      |
| Type                                  | Specify "cloning"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |
| Resource ID of Virtual Server for SAP | Specify the resource ID of the target virtual server for SAP for which you want to create a private image                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Yes      |
| Comment                               | Specify a comment character string to be set to the private image. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Specify double-byte and single-byte characters other than percent signs (%), backslashes (\), double quotation marks ("), and newline characters</li><li>Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 96 characters</li></ul> |          |



Note

- As a target for which you want to create a private image, specify a virtual server for SAP that has started up before.
- When creating a private image, stop the target virtual server for SAP in advance.

## Deleting a Private Image that Has Been Created

Delete a private image that is no longer needed by specifying its name.

## Changing the Disclosure Range of a Created Private Image

Change the disclosure range of a private image that has been created to either of the following:

- domain: Within a contract number (domain)
- private: Only within this project



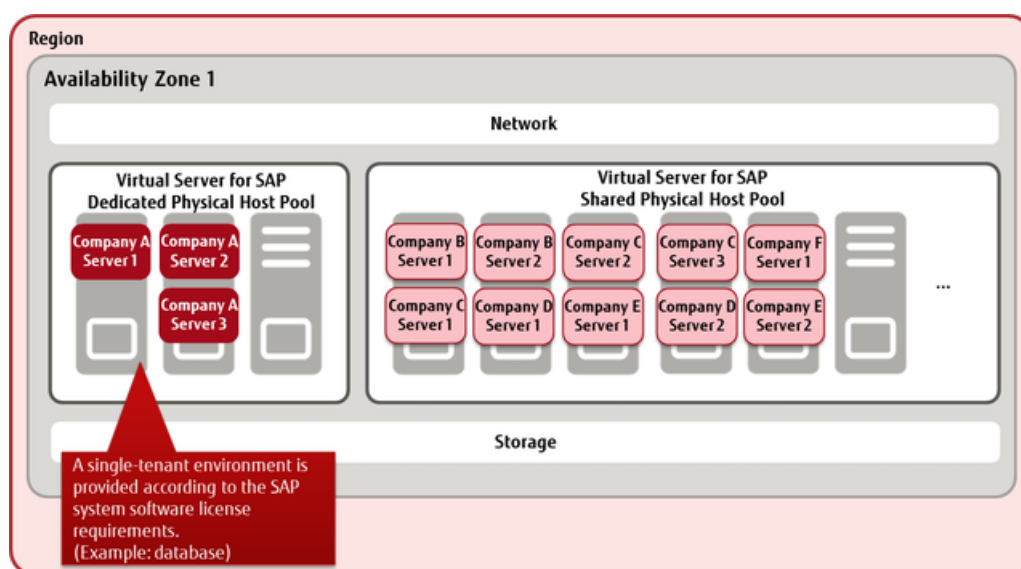
The conditions for changing the disclosure range are as follows:

- Tip
- The private image of this project is disclosed in the contract number (domain)
  - The private image is disclosed only within the project

## 2.2.2 Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP

### 2.2.2.1 Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP

A pool for dedicated physical hosts is secured for each contract number (domain), and a function that creates a dedicated virtual server for SAP is provided.



This server can be used for environments that must be separate from other users (single tenant), as required in the license for SAP system software.



Networks and storage are shared in a virtual server for SAP environment.

Important

## Available Server Types for Dedicated Virtual Servers for SAP

The types of virtual servers for SAP that are available as dedicated virtual servers are the same as normal virtual servers for SAP.

Table 66: List of Types of Virtual Server for SAP (Flavors)

| Type Name | Number of Virtual CPUs | Memory (GB) |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| WS-4      | 4                      | 16          |
| WS-8      | 8                      | 32          |

| Type Name | Number of Virtual CPUs | Memory (GB) |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| WS-16     | 16                     | 64          |

## Physical Host Pool Menu

- Basic Set: "2 server configuration"

A physical host pool that includes a failover host is secured as the creation destination for the virtual server for SAP that is dedicated to the customer. You must apply for one Basic Set for each availability zone in which you will run a dedicated virtual server for SAP.

- Additional Servers

Use additional servers when you want to increase the capacity of available dedicated virtual servers for SAP, such as when there is increased demand on the system. Physical hosts are added to the same pool where the Basic Set is currently used.



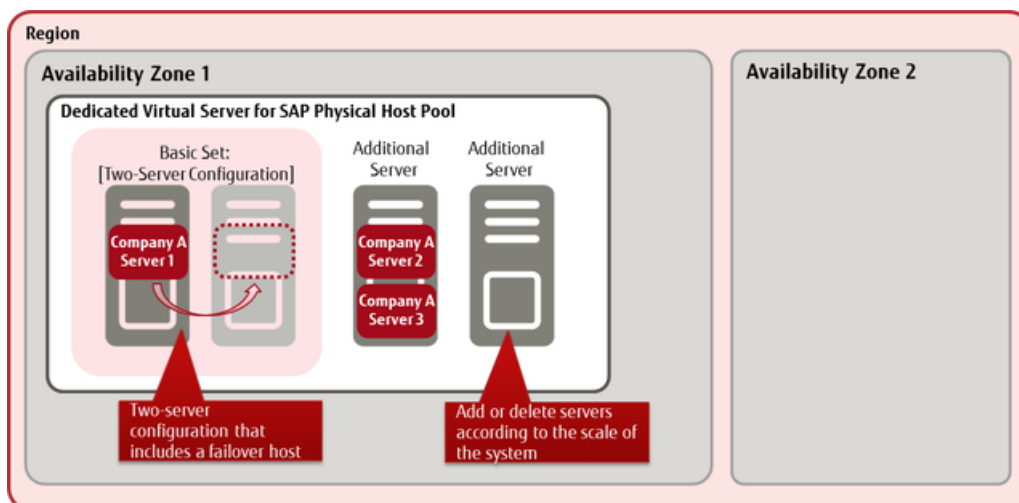
Tip

The following amounts of resources can be used by each physical host.

|                        |        |
|------------------------|--------|
| Number of Virtual CPUs | 42     |
| Memory                 | 245 GB |

Confirm the type of dedicated virtual server for SAP, and then estimate the number of dedicated virtual servers that can be created.

Figure 24: Using the Physical Host Pool Menu



## Functions Included

When you create a virtual server for SAP, you have the option of creating it in a physical host pool that you have secured. Dedicated virtual servers for SAP that you create can be managed by project, in the same way as a normal virtual server for SAP.



Note

- You cannot specify a specific physical host in a pool to create a virtual server.
- The physical host pool for a single contract number is shared between all projects.

Dedicated virtual servers for SAP that you have created have the same Compute function as normal virtual servers for SAP.

- Compute
  - Enabling/disabling of an Environment

- Dedicated virtual server for SAP
  - Creating/deleting a dedicated virtual server for SAP
  - Startup/termination of a dedicated virtual server for SAP
  - Restarting a dedicated virtual server for SAP
  - Acquiring information for a dedicated virtual server for SAP
- OS Provision Service
- Software Support Service
- Auto recovery of a virtual server
- Image management

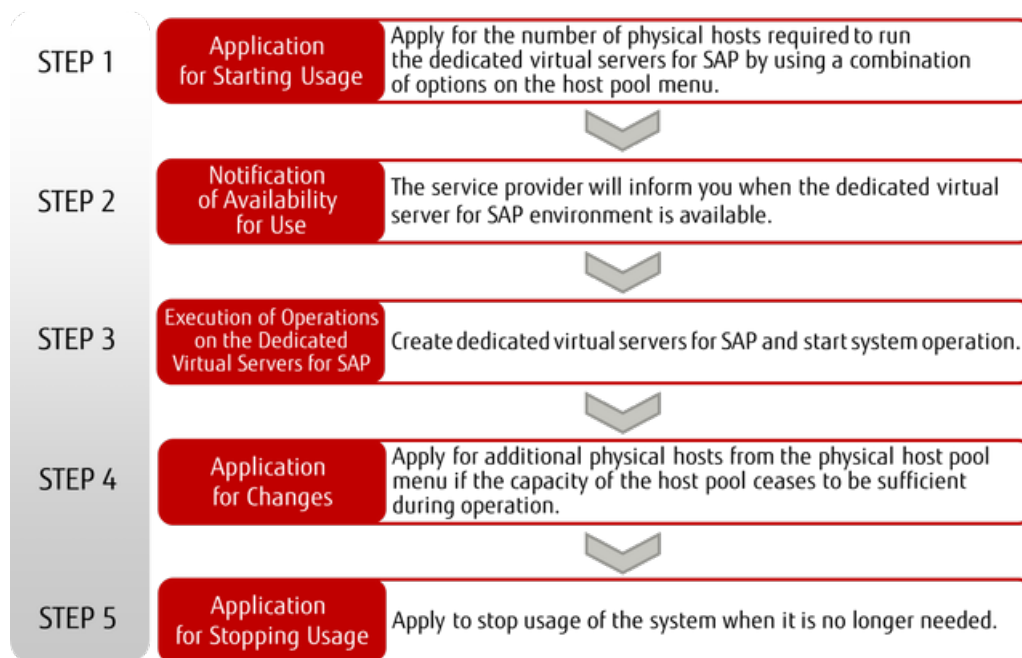
The same functions as normal virtual servers for SAP are also provided for the following:

- Storage
- Network

## How to Use This Service

---

Figure 25: How to Use a Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP



## Points to Note

---

- A contract number (domain) can have only one physical host pool where dedicated virtual servers for SAP are created.
- Although the physical host is a dedicated machine, it is unlikely to improve the performance of any dedicated virtual servers for SAP that are to be created.
- Although the physical host is separate from other users, security is not guaranteed because the network is shared. Use the firewall function to ensure security.

---

# Part 3: Storage

---

## Topics:

- *Block Storage*
- *Snapshot*
- *Object Storage*
- *Network Attached Storage (NAS)*

With physical storage separated by virtualization technology, K5 IaaS provides a virtual infrastructure that is accessible via the Internet.

## 3.1 Block Storage

### 3.1.1 System Storage

When you create a virtual server, select a bootable block storage source as system storage.

Select from the following sources:

- Image

Create block storage from an image (such as an OS image provided by Fujitsu or an image created by the user from a virtual server) and attach it to the virtual server.

Table 67: OS Image and System Storage Size

| OS                           | Size of System Storage Specified |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Windows 2008 R2 SP1          | 80 GB                            |
| Windows 2012 R2              | 80 GB                            |
| Windows 2012                 | 80 GB                            |
| CentOS 6.5                   | 30 GB                            |
| CentOS 7.2                   | 30 GB                            |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5 | 40 GB                            |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2 | 40 GB                            |
| Ubuntu 14.04 LTS             | Specify 3 GB or more             |



Tip

- When you create a virtual server, specify whether to retain the system storage of the server upon deletion.
- If you specify to retain the system storage, we recommend that you stop the server in advance in order to avoid damage to the data in the system storage.

- Existing block storage

Attach existing bootable block storage to create a virtual server. When you create block storage, select disk performance from the following:

- Standard (type M1)

Table 68: List of Disk Types

| Type     | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard | Use this in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When you deploy application data that requires frequent file access (reading and writing)</li><li>• When you handle a lot of large data files</li></ul> |

- Snapshot of existing block storage

Create a snapshot from existing bootable block storage, and attach the snapshot to create a virtual server.

## Block Device Mapping Settings

To attach block storage to a virtual server, you must configure the block device mapping settings. Create new block storage from the specified resource, and attach it as a boot device for the virtual server. Then start the block storage.

Table 69: List of Items That Can Be Set for Device Mapping Settings

| Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Required |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Device Name        | <p>Specify a device name in <code>/dev/vd*</code> format, where <code>*</code> is a character string that is valid as a device name.</p> <p>Example: <code>/dev/vda</code></p> <hr/> <p> <b>Note</b> We recommend that you specify <code>/dev/vda</code> as the device name for system storage. If <code>/dev/vda</code> is assigned to storage other than the system storage, such as when you add storage, you cannot appropriately make a template using Template Builder.</p> <hr/>                                                                                     | Yes      |
| Source Type        | <p>Specify one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Image (image)</li> <li>Existing block storage (volume)</li> <li>Snapshot of existing block storage (snapshot)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |
| Connected to       | You can specify "volume" only.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Yes      |
| Boot Sequence      | Specify the order in which the devices start. To set up the block storage as a boot disk, specify 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |
| Resource ID        | Specify the ID of the resource selected in [Source Type].                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Yes      |
| Block Storage Size | <p>Specify the size of the block storage that you want to create.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Note</b> The notes for each source type specified are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you have specified "image": Make sure that you specify a valid size.</li> <li>When you have specified "volume": The same block storage size as the source is used. Even if you specify a value, it is ignored.</li> <li>When you have specified "snapshot": If you omit this field, the size will be the same as the snapshot source block storage.</li> </ul> <hr/> |          |
| Delete Flag        | <p>Specify whether block storage that is created when the system is scaled out or when a stack is created will be deleted when the system is scaled in or when the stack is deleted. Specify "true" to delete storage.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Note</b> Even if you specify "true," block storage is not deleted if a snapshot has been taken of it.</p> <hr/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |

## Points to Note

- You cannot detach the system storage from the virtual server.

## 3.1.2 Additional Storage

When you need additional disk space, create new block storage and attach it to the virtual server as additional storage.

When you create block storage, select disk performance from the following:

- Standard (type M1)



Tip

If you detach the additional storage before deleting a virtual server, you can reuse the data in the storage.

Table 70: List of Disk Types

| Type     | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard | Use this in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When you deploy application data that requires frequent file access (reading and writing)</li><li>• When you handle a lot of large data files</li></ul> |

## Limiting Values

Table 71: List of Limiting Values Related to Block Storage

| Item                                   | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Size of Additional Storage             | 1 GB or more (specified in GB)                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Number of Storage Systems              | 50 per project per availability zone<br> Note The total number of additional storage systems and additional ports must be no more than 26 for a single virtual server. |
| Storage Capacity (total for a project) | 5,000 GB per project per availability zone                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Number of Snapshots Taken              | 100 per project per availability zone                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## 3.2 Snapshot

---

### 3.2.1 Snapshot Function

---

Create a snapshot of the block storage currently in use. You can use this function for both system storage and additional storage.

The following functions are provided:

#### Taking a Snapshot

---

Take a snapshot of the block storage currently in use on a virtual server. The virtual server can be either running or stopped.



Note

We do not guarantee operation using a snapshot that was taken while the virtual server was online. To ensure that a snapshot serves as backup data, you must take the snapshot while the virtual server is stopped.

---

#### Deleting a Snapshot

---

Specify snapshot data that is no longer needed and delete it.

#### Restoring from a Snapshot

---

Attach and reuse snapshot data when you create a virtual server.



Note

To reuse it for system storage, the block storage that you use as the snapshot source must be bootable.

---

## 3.3 Object Storage

### 3.3.1 Object Storage

This is online storage space for dividing the data to be stored into objects (their contents and metadata) and saving the data. Object storage is also referred to as object-based storage.

This service allows you to create containers or register objects on end points that exist in each region in order to store binary data in object storage.

The data saved in each region is distributed among multiple availability zones for storage. This is to ensure that even if one availability zone stops, you can still retrieve data from other availability zones.

### 3.3.2 Creating/Deleting a Container

Create or delete a container (storage space) for storing objects.

#### Creating a Container

Specify a region to create a container. Also, specify the items listed below to create a container.



Note

Since containers do not have a layered structure, all the containers are created in a parallel structure.

- [Access Policy Settings](#) on page 91
- Synchronization Settings
- [Versioning](#) on page 92
- [Custom Metadata Management](#) on page 92

#### Deleting a Container

Delete a container.



Important

Containers with objects cannot be deleted.

#### Limiting Values

Table 72: List of Limiting Values Related to Object Storage

| Item                                | Limiting Values     |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Number of Objects per User          | Unlimited           |
| Number of Objects per Container     | Unlimited           |
| Length of Object Name               | 1,024 bytes or less |
| Size of Object that Can Be Uploaded | 0 - 5 GB            |
| Length of Object Metadata Name      | 128 bytes or less   |
| Length of Object Metadata           | 2,048 bytes or less |
| Number of Containers per User       | Unlimited           |
| Length of Container Name            | 256 bytes or less   |

| Item                              | Limiting Values          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Uniqueness of Container Name      | Unique name in a project |
| Length of Container Metadata Name | 128 bytes or less        |
| Length of Container Metadata      | 2,048 bytes or less      |

## 3.3.3 Container Management

Change the settings of an existing container.

The items that you can change are as follows:

- [Access Policy Settings](#) on page 91
- Synchronization settings
- [Versioning](#) on page 92
- Addition of custom metadata

## 3.3.4 Access Policy Settings

Set access permissions for a container and control the access to the registered objects.

The access policy is based on the following two types of information:

- Policy settings for each user and project

Table 73: Values that Can Be Specified for Each User and Project

| Setting Target | Description Method         | Configurable Access Permissions                                                                 |
|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Project        | <Project Name>             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Read permission</li> <li>• Write permission</li> </ul> |
| User           | <Project Name>:<User Name> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Read permission</li> <li>• Write permission</li> </ul> |

- Policy settings based on the HTTP referer header

Table 74: Values that Can Be Specified Based on the HTTP Referer Header

| Setting Target | Description Method                                                                                                                      | Configurable Access Permissions                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Host           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When permitted .r:&lt;Host Name&gt;</li> <li>• When forbidden .r:-&lt;Host Name&gt;</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Permission to retrieve the object list</li> <li>• Reading permitted without a token</li> <li>• Reading not permitted</li> <li>• Writing not permitted</li> </ul> |
| Domain         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When permitted .r:&lt;Domain Name&gt;, or .r:*.&lt;Domain Name&gt;</li> </ul>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Permission to retrieve the object list</li> <li>• Reading permitted without a token</li> </ul>                                                                   |

| Setting Target | Description Method                                                                                                     | Configurable Access Permissions                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When forbidden .r:-&lt;Domain Name&gt;, or .r:-*.&lt;Domain Name&gt;</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reading not permitted</li> <li>Writing not permitted</li> </ul>                                                                                            |
| All access     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When permitted .r:*</li> </ul>                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Permission to retrieve the object list</li> <li>Reading permitted without a token</li> <li>Reading not permitted</li> <li>Writing not permitted</li> </ul> |

## 3.3.5 Versioning

If you set a versioning container for the old objects to the existing container, the versioning process for all the objects registered to that container will always be carried out automatically.

When objects are registered to the container targeted for the versioning process, the old objects are renamed according to specific naming conventions and moved to the versioning container. If you delete the most recent object, the preceding object is moved from the versioning container to the original container. The object name is then changed to the original object name.

### Starting the Versioning Process

First, create a versioning container. Next, set the versioning container to the container where you want to carry out the versioning process.

### Stopping the Versioning Process

Delete the versioning container settings from the container where the versioning process is taking place.



Stopping the versioning process will not delete the versioning container.

Note

### Retrieving Objects from Previous Versions

Retrieve objects directly from the versioning container. The objects moved to the versioning container are stored according to the naming conventions described below:

```
[Object Name Length][Object Name]/[Time Stamp]
```



Note

- The object name length contains a zero-padded three-character string in hexadecimal form.
- The time stamp indicates the creation time of the most recent object.

## 3.3.6 Custom Metadata Management

Users can set or change metadata freely according to the purpose of its use for the container or for the objects used in the object storage service.

Use an HTTP header in the custom metadata settings.

## Setting/Changing Metadata

Name and set the metadata for the container or objects you want to use. To change metadata that has already been set, specify an existing metadata name to overwrite it.

- Setting the metadata for the container

Use the format below to set the metadata.

```
X-Container-Meta-{Metadata Name}: {Metadata Value}
```

- Setting the metadata for the objects

Use the format below to set the metadata.

```
X-Object-Meta-{Metadata Name}: {Metadata Value}
```



Note

Object metadata is set anew and the existing metadata is discarded. To keep the existing metadata, the user needs to set it again.

## Deleting Metadata

Delete existing metadata. To delete the metadata, enter an empty character string for the existing metadata or use the format below.

- Deleting the metadata of the container

```
X-Remove-Container-Meta-{Metadata Name}: {Metadata Value}
```



Tip

When you use the "X-Remove-" format, the specified metadata value is ignored.

## 3.3.7 Registering/Deleting an Object

This function allows you to specify a created container to store data. When storing data, you can add metadata and handle the data and metadata together as one object.



Important

To store an object, you need to create a container first. You cannot register the object alone.

## Registering an Object

Specify data on the local drive, and store it in the container as an object. When registering an object, configure the following items.

Table 75: List of Object Settings

| Item                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Required |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Delete at / Delete after | Select one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Delete the created objects after a certain period of time</li><li>• Delete the objects on a specific date and at a specific time</li></ul> |          |
| Custom Metadata          | Specify metadata in the formats described in <a href="#">Custom Metadata Management</a> on page 92.                                                                                                                        |          |

## Deleting an Object

Delete objects stored in a container.

## Limiting Values

Table 76: List of Limiting Values Related to Object Storage

| Item                                | Limiting Values          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Number of Objects per User          | Unlimited                |
| Number of Objects per Container     | Unlimited                |
| Length of Object Name               | 1,024 bytes or less      |
| Size of Object that Can Be Uploaded | 0 - 5 GB                 |
| Length of Object Metadata Name      | 128 bytes or less        |
| Length of Object Metadata           | 2,048 bytes or less      |
| Number of Containers per User       | Unlimited                |
| Length of Container Name            | 256 bytes or less        |
| Uniqueness of Container Name        | Unique name in a project |
| Length of Container Metadata Name   | 128 bytes or less        |
| Length of Container Metadata        | 2,048 bytes or less      |

## 3.3.8 Object Management

This function allows you to retrieve data from an existing object, copy the object, and change the registration information.

### Retrieving an Object

Specify an existing object to download the data.

### Copying an Object

Specify an existing object to create a copy. New objects are created in the same container.

### Changing the Registration Information

Specify an existing object to change the settings.

Table 77: List of Object Settings

| Item                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Required |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Delete at / Delete after | Select one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Delete the created objects after a certain period of time</li><li>Delete the objects on a specific date and at a specific time</li></ul> |          |

| Item            | Description                                                                                | Required |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Custom Metadata | Specify metadata in the formats described in <i>Custom Metadata Management</i> on page 92. |          |

## 3.4 Network Attached Storage (NAS)

### 3.4.1 NAS Software Image

This function provides the virtual server image that can be created as network attached storage (NAS).

The provided virtual server image and template are as follows:

- Virtual server image with NAS server (GlusterFS) software installed

Table 78: NAS Software Image Information

|            |                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Image Name | FJK5-NAS-Vxx                                                                                                                                            |
|            |  "xx" represents the version of the image. This may be updated.<br>Tip |
| Image OS   | CentOS 6.5 64bit (English)                                                                                                                              |

- A template for creating the NAS software image in the user environment

Use the resources described above to build NAS in the user environment.



Important

- The following virtual servers cannot be used because they do not meet the operating requirements of NAS software.
  - P-1
  - T-1
- The NAS built in the user environment must be operated/maintained by the customer. No support service is provided for the NAS server created with this function.
- Before application, carefully examine the capacity, performance, and maintenance of the function.

### 3.4.2 How to Use NAS Software Image

This section explains how to configure the settings that are required in order to create an NAS software image in the customer's environment and make it available.

#### Before you begin

In order to create and use the NAS in your user environment, you must create the following resources within the project to which the user belongs in advance:

- Network and subnet
- Virtual router that connects to the above network



Note

Configure the routing, security group, and firewall correctly so that communication is possible between the subnets in which the NAS server was created.

- SSH key pair to be set for the virtual server
- Network connector and connector endpoint

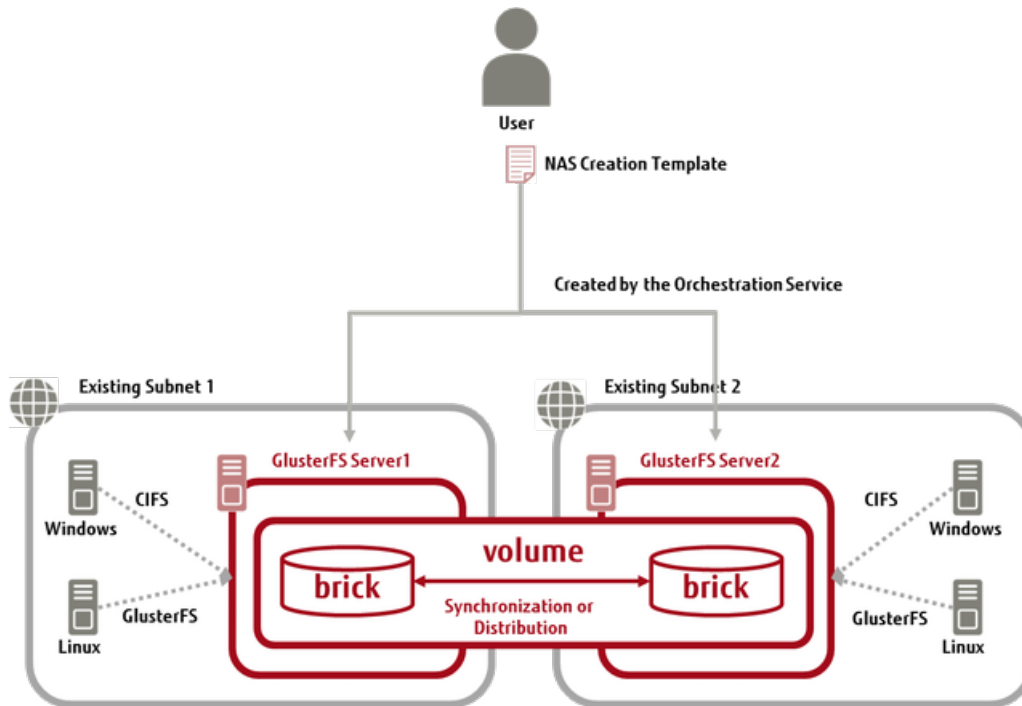


Required only in configuration across the availability zones.

## About this task

This section describes the procedure for the creation of the NAS image using the template provided by the orchestration service and configuring it to be accessed as NAS. The structure of the system that is created is as shown in the figure below.

Figure 26: Creation of a NAS Image by Using the Template



## Procedure

1. Prepare the NAS creation template file "glusterfs\_nas\_YYYYMMDD.yaml."



Obtain the NAS creation template file "glusterfs\_nas\_YYYYMMDD.yaml" from the service provider.

2. Specify the contents of the NAS creation template file for the template parameter for the stack creation function provided by the orchestration service.



If the NAS creation template can be accessed by URL, specify the URL for the template\_url parameter.

The parameters below are set for the template. Specify the values for the parameters according to the environment in use.

Table 79: List of NAS Creation Template Parameters

| Parameter         | Contents Specified (Value)                                |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| nas1_name         | Virtual server name of GlusterFS Server1                  |
| nas1_keypair_name | Key pair name of GlusterFS Server1                        |
| nas1_network      | Creation destination network ID for GlusterFS Server1     |
| nas1_subnet       | Creation destination subnet ID for GlusterFS Server1      |
| nas1_subnet_cidr  | Range of addresses of the above subnet (in CIDR notation) |

| Parameter              | Contents Specified (Value)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nas1_availability_zone | Creation destination availability zone name of GlusterFS Server1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| nas2_name              | Virtual server name of GlusterFS Server2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| nas2_keypair_name      | Key pair name of GlusterFS Server2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| nas2_network           | Creation destination network ID for GlusterFS Server2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| nas2_subnet            | Creation destination subnet ID for GlusterFS Server2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| nas2_subnet_cidr       | Range of addresses of the above subnet (in CIDR notation)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| nas2_availability_zone | Creation destination availability zone name of GlusterFS Server2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| flavor                 | Server type in use by GlusterFS Server1/2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| storage_size           | <p>Size of the block storage (brick) to be attached to GlusterFS Server1/2</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Tip</b> The size that you specify here will be used as the volume for the NAS.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Important</b> As additional storage of the size specified here is attached to both GlusterFS Server1/2, the storage charges are doubled.</p> <hr/> |
| storage_type           | <p>Selection for a type of block storage</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Standard (type M1)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| client_cidr            | <p>Specify in CIDR notation the network address of the subnet where the client to be permitted access to the NAS is created.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Tip</b> With the NAS creation template, create a security group to be permitted to connect from the network address specified for this parameter and set it on GlusterFS Server1/2.</p> <hr/>                                                                                   |

### 3. Create a stack.

Wait for creation to be complete, while checking the progress of creation of the stack. When creation of the stack is complete, information such as that below can be referred to as fields that are output.

```
GlusterFS Commands:
  description: gluster Command
  value: |
    * Display the status of peers.
      gluster peer status

    * Display information about all volumes, or the specified volume.
      gluster volume info vol01
      gluster volume status vol01

    * Start the specified volume.
      gluster volume start vol01

    * Stop the specified volume.
      gluster volume stop vol01

    * GlusterFS service Logs and locations
      glusterd: /var/log/glusterfs/etc-glusterfs-glusterd.vol.1.log
```

```
bricks : /var/log/glusterfs/bricks/bricks-vol01.log

more information see http://gluster.readthedocs.org/en/latest/

mount:
description: How to mount
value: |
* glusterfs
mount -t glusterfs IPADDRESS:/vol01 /mnt/MOUNTDIR
* cifs
\\IPADDRESS\Share
```

## Results

The NAS you created is now in operation.



Note

Do not create multiple NAS servers in the same project using the NAS creation template file. When you need to create multiple NAS servers in the same project, make corrections so that different names are used for the host names (nas1, nas2) set in the template file.

```
... (omitted)
echo '$NAS1_IP_ADDR nas1' >> /etc/hosts
echo '$NAS2_IP_ADDR nas2' >> /etc/hosts
... (omitted)
```

## What to do next

To access the NAS server, you must perform either of the following on the client:

- Installation and setup of GlusterFS client
- Setup of sharing in Windows



Note

Do not access the NAS server using NFS protocol.

- For Linux OS



Note

Use GlusterFS client version 3.6.X (X represents 2 or later). When you upgraded the NAS server version, also upgrade the client version.

A user with administrator (root) privileges must perform the following operations:

1. If glusterfs is installed, uninstall glusterfs.

```
# yum remove glusterfs-server
# yum remove glusterfs-client
```

2. If the glusterfs repository exists in the yum repository, delete it.

How to check: Execute "yum repolist all" to check whether the glusterfs repository exists.

How to delete: Delete the file in which the glusterfs repository is set from the /etc/yum.repos.d directory or move to a different directory.

3. Register the repository.

```
# wget http://download.gluster.org/pub/gluster/glusterfs/3.6/3.6.2/
EPEL.repo/glusterfs-epel.repo -P /etc/yum.repos.d
# yum clean all
# yum search glusterfs
# yum -y install glusterfs-client
```

4. Add the following settings to /etc/hosts:

```
IPADDRESS nas1
IPADDRESS nas2
```

In "IPADDRESS," specify the private IP address of nas1/nas2 server. Check the private IP address in the portal screen or the API execution results.

5. Create the directory to be used for mount destination.

```
# mkdir /mnt/MOUNTDIR
```

In "MOUNTDIR," specify a directory.

6. Mount the NAS server.

```
# mount -t glusterfs IPADDRESS:/vol01 /mnt/MOUNTDIR
```



To the -t option of the mount command, specify "glusterfs." Do not specify "cifs."

Note

7. For details about other additional settings such as security, refer to the GlusterFS website<sup>2</sup>.
- For Windows

A user with administrator (Administrator) privileges must perform the following operations:

1. From the Start menu, click **[All Programs] > [Accessories] > [Run]** and enter the following string in the **[Open]** box to connect.

```
\\IPADDRESS\Share
```

In "IPADDRESS," specify the private IP address of nas1/nas2 server. Check the private IP address in the portal screen or the API execution results.

2. For details about other additional settings such as security, refer to the Samba website<sup>3</sup>.

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://gluster.readthedocs.org/en/latest/Administrator%20Guide/Setting%20Up%20Clients/>

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.samba.org/samba/docs/man/Samba-HOWTO-Collection/install.html#id2553683>

---

# Part 4: Network

---

## Topics:

- *Virtual Network*
- *Port Addition Service*
- *Global IP Service*
- *VPN (IPsec VPN)*
- *Firewall*
- *DNS Service*
- *Load Balancer*
- *Network Connector*

With a physical network separated by virtualization technology, K5 IaaS provides a virtual infrastructure that is accessible via the Internet.

## 4.1 Virtual Network

### 4.1.1 Network Management

Network management allows you to create or delete networks in a project in order to create resources such as virtual servers.

You can create multiple networks in a project.

#### Creating a Network

To create a network, specify the following items.

Table 80: List of Network Settings

| Item                                           | Description                                                                                                                                          | Required |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Network Name                                   | Specify a name to identify the network.                                                                                                              |          |
| Availability Zone Name at Creation Destination | Specify the name of the availability zone where the network will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used. |          |



Note

To communicate with an external network, you must create a virtual router and connect it to the internal network.

To create resources such as virtual servers, create a subnet on the network you created.

#### Deleting a Network

Delete a network that is no longer needed.



Important

If there are virtual servers or a virtual router to which a user is connected on the network to be deleted, you must disconnect the virtual resources from them before deleting the network.

### 4.1.2 Subnet Management

Subnet functions include the management of private IP addresses for resources that are connected to a network and the automatic setting of an IP address with DHCP.

#### Creating a Subnet

You can set the following items on a network to create a subnet.

Table 81: List of Subnet Settings

| Item        | Description                                                    | Required |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Subnet Name | Specify a name to identify the subnet.                         |          |
| Network ID  | Specify the ID of the network to which the subnet will belong. | Yes      |
| IP Version  | Specify IPv4.                                                  | Yes      |

| Item                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Required |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Network Address                     | <p>Specify an address from within the following ranges of private IP addresses, in CIDR notation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Class A: 10.0.0.0 - 10.255.255.255</li> <li>• Class B: 172.16.0.0 - 172.31.255.255</li> <li>• Class C: 192.168.0.0 - 192.168.255.255</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> IP addresses outside the above ranges can also be used. However, in that case the user is responsible for the settings and verification of the operation.</p> | Yes      |
| IP Address Range                    | Specify a starting address and an ending address for the IP address range to be assigned within a network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Gateway Address                     | Specify a gateway IP address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |
| Enable/Disable DHCP Auto Allocation | Specify true or false.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |          |
| Availability Zone Name              | Specify the availability zone where the subnet will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |          |



Tip

In order to communicate with a DNS server, you must allow outbound communication to the Internet. Check the settings of the [security group functions](#) or [firewall service](#), and configure them to allow communication to the DNS server. (Protocol: TCP/UDP, Port No.: 53)

## Deleting a Subnet

Delete a subnet that is no longer needed.



Note

If a resource connected to the subnet is currently using an IP address, you will not be able to delete the subnet.

## 4.1.3 Security Group Functions

Security group functions allow you to define and configure groups of rule settings in order to perform packet filtering on ports that are connected to virtual servers.

You can set multiple rules in a security group. Packets that match one of the rules in a security group that is set on a port are allowed, and all other packets are blocked. (whitelist method, OR condition)



Note

You cannot set a security group on a port of a virtual router or a DHCP server.

## Creating a Security Group

The [default security group](#), which automatically blocks communication, is set on the port. Create a security group and configure rules that allow communication as necessary.

To create a security group, specify the following items.

**Table 82: List of Security Group Settings**

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                     | Required |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Security Group Name    | Specify a name that identifies the security group.                                                                                              |          |
| Description            | Enter a description of the security group to be created.                                                                                        |          |
| Availability Zone Name | Specify the availability zone where the security group will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used. |          |

## Default Rules

The default rules when a security group is created are shown below.

**Table 83: Default Rules When a Security Group Is Created**

| Direction         | Communication Partner | Protocol | IP Version |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------|------------|
| Outbound (Egress) | All                   | All      | IPv4       |
| Outbound (Egress) | All                   | All      | IPv6       |

## Creating a Rule

Rules for performing packet filtering consist of the following items. You can register multiple rules in a single security group.



Tip

For communication between virtual servers where both can use the security group functions, in general we recommend using the security group ID to specify the communication partner.

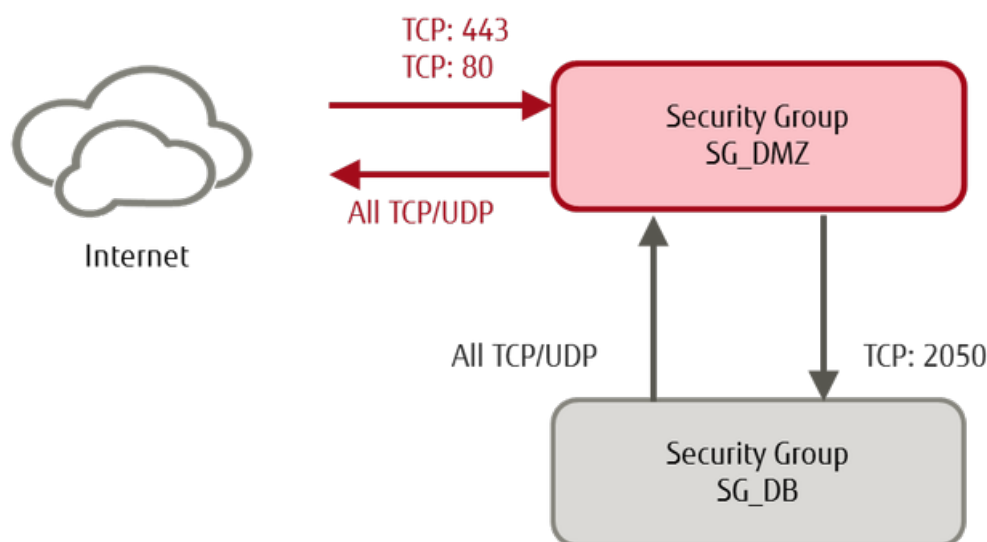
To create a rule, specify the following items.

**Table 84: List of Security Group Rule Settings**

| Item                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Required |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Security Group ID       | Specify the ID of the security group in which you will register the rule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Yes      |
| Communication Direction | Specify either inbound (Ingress) or outbound (Egress).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |
| IP Version              | Specify IPv4.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| Communication Partner   | <div>For inbound, specify the sender. For outbound, specify the destination. Use either of the following:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>IP address in CIDR notation</li><li>Security group</li></ul></div> <div> Note Specifying a security group is equivalent to specifying the IP addresses for all ports where that security group is set.</div> |          |
| Protocol Information    | <div>Specify one of the following:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>tcp</li></ul></div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Yes      |

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Required |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• udp</li> <li>• icmp</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |          |
| Starting Port No.      | <p>Specify the starting port number that is appropriate for the protocol information.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Tip</b> If you want to use a single port, specify the same value for the starting port number and the ending port number.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Warning</b> If you specify 0 for the starting port number, communication will be allowed on all ports. Therefore, do not specify 0.</p> <hr/> |          |
| Ending Port No.        | Specify the ending port number that is appropriate for the protocol information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| Availability Zone Name | Specify the availability zone where rules will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |

Figure 27: Example of Configuring Security Group Rules



## Default Security Group

If you omit security group settings when creating a port, the default security group created in the project will be set automatically.

 The security group name for the default security group is "default."

**Tip**

The initial rule settings for the default security group are shown below.

 You can add rules to the default security group.

Tip

Table 85: Default Security Group Rules

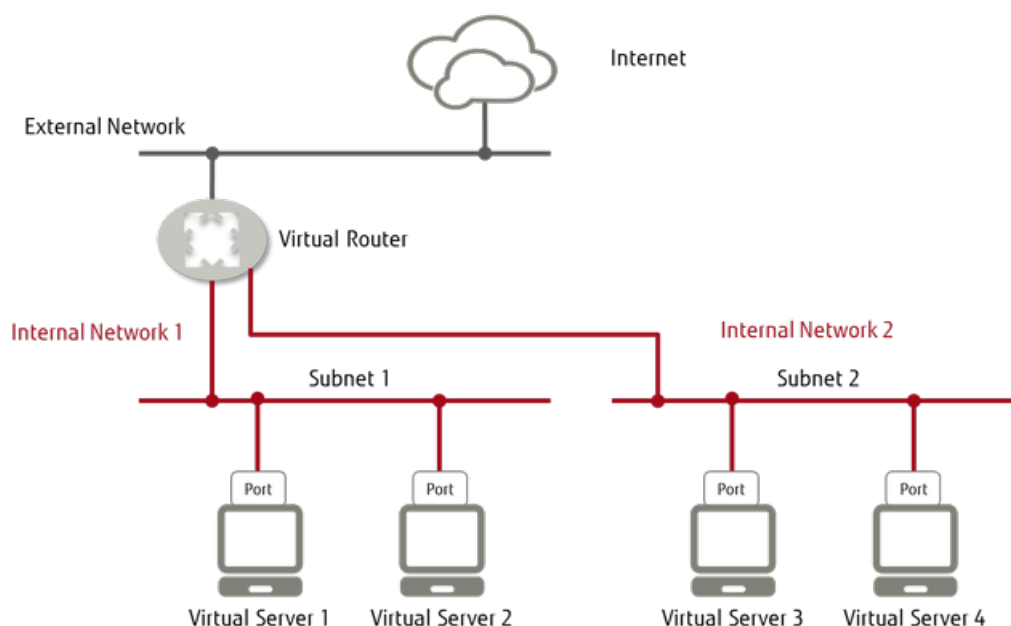
| Direction | Communication Partner | Protocol | IP Version |
|-----------|-----------------------|----------|------------|
| Egress    | All                   | All      | IPv4       |
| Ingress   | Own security group    | All      | IPv4       |

## 4.1.4 Virtual Router Function

The virtual router function is used to connect an external network to an internal network, or to connect multiple internal networks to each other.

The relationship between networks and a virtual router is shown in the following figure.

Figure 28: Relationship between External/Internal Networks and a Virtual Router



## Creating a Virtual Router

To create a virtual router, specify the following items:



Warning

Do not specify an external network when creating a virtual router. Otherwise, communication to the Internet will not be possible. In order to specify an external network, use the function for modifying the information of a virtual router after it has been created.

Table 86: List of Virtual Router Settings

| Item                | Description                                    | Required |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Virtual Router Name | Specify a name to identify the virtual router. |          |

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                     | Required |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Availability Zone Name | Specify the availability zone where the virtual router will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used. |          |

## Modifying the Virtual Router Information

You can modify the setting information for an existing virtual router. To connect the virtual router to an external network, use this function to set the external network.

Table 87: Modifying the Virtual Router Information (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                | Description                                                                                                                                                                            | Required |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Virtual Router Name | Specify the name of the virtual router for which you want to change the settings.                                                                                                      |          |
| External Network ID | Specify the ID for the external network.<br> You can confirm the ID in the list of subnet IDs.<br>Tip |          |

## Managing the Connection between a Virtual Router and a Network

Use the following operation to add a new subnet connection to an existing virtual router.

1. Create a port on the subnet for which you want to add a connection.
2. Add the created port to the virtual router as an interface.



Tip

A routing table is set automatically so that subnets connected to the same virtual router can communicate via the virtual router.



Important

If the virtual router is hierarchically structured, the user should set the routing table on the virtual router so that communication can take place normally.

## Deleting a Virtual Router

Delete a virtual router that is no longer needed.



Important

If a subnet is connected to a virtual router, you cannot delete the virtual router. You must first disconnect from all subnets.

## NAT Functions

You can use the following NAT functions on a virtual router.

- SNAT

Communication from an internal network to an external network. The sender global IP address used for SNAT is unique to each virtual router connected to an external network and is not shared with any virtual routers of other projects.

- DNAT

Communication from an external network to an internal network

If a global IP address has been assigned to the port on a resource, address translation will be performed between the global IP address and private IP addresses.

## Inter-Project Network Connection Function

---

Connect networks via a virtual router between different projects in the same contract number (domain). To the virtual router in your project, set the information of a port existing in another project to be connected to, as shown below.

Table 88: Inter-Project Network Connection (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item    | Description                                                                                                       | Required |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Port ID | Specify the ID of a port that exists in a project different from the project to which the virtual router belongs. | Yes      |

## Disconnection of Inter-Project Network Connection

---

To disconnect the inter-project network connection, delete the information of the port (belonging to another project) that is already connected to the virtual router.

Table 89: Disconnection of Inter-Project Network Connection (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item    | Description                                                                               | Required |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Port ID | Specify the port ID from which the inter-project network connection will be disconnected. | Yes      |

## 4.2 Port Addition Service

### 4.2.1 Port Management

This function allows you to create and manage ports (network interfaces) to associate with IP addresses in order to connect resources such as virtual servers to a network.

If you specify only a subnet when creating the following resources, the system will automatically create and assign ports.

- Virtual server



Note

If you want to create a port by specifying an IP address rather than using automatic allocation with DHCP, first create a port at that IP address in advance, and then assign it to a virtual server.



Tip

You can add multiple ports to a virtual server.

- Virtual router



Note

Ports are assigned automatically only if they are created on the default gateway (x.x.x.1). To add a virtual router to a network to which a virtual router is already connected at the address x.x.x.1, you must configure the port manually.

### Creating a Port

Create a port to specify and assign an IP address that is not used in a subnet, or to add a new port to a resource.



Note

You can assign an IP address only when you create a new port. To change the IP address, use the following procedure:

1. Delete the port assigned to the existing IP address.
2. Restart the virtual server.
3. Specify a new IP address, and re-create the port.
4. Assign the re-created port to resources.



Tip

To add the port to a Red Hat Enterprise Linux virtual server or a CentOS virtual server, use the following procedure:

1. Log in to the virtual server as an Administrator.
2. Create the settings file for the network interface.
3. Restart the network services.

Table 90: Creating a Port (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item            | Description                                                        | Required |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Network ID      | Specify the ID of the network to which the port will be connected. | Yes      |
| Port Name       | Specify a name to identify the port.                               |          |
| Owner Device ID | Specify the resource ID that owns the port to be created.          |          |

| Item                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Required |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| MAC Address                   | If you explicitly specify a MAC address, the system will assign that MAC address to the port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| Private IP Address            | <p>If you explicitly specify an IP address, the system will assign that IP address to the port. If this setting is omitted, an address from within the range of addresses on the network specified by the network ID will be assigned.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Note</b> If you specify an IP address that is already in use, creation of the port will fail.</p> <hr/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| List of Allowed Address Pairs | <p>Out of the communications blocked by the filtering rule against IP spoofing<sup>4</sup>, specify the senders to be explicitly allowed, using a list of combination of MAC address and IP address.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Tip</b> When running a program such as PRIMECLUSTER on a virtual server, allow the combination of MAC address and IP address of the sender that requires communication, using this parameter.</p> <hr/> <p> <b>Warning</b> You cannot use this function to run Windows NLB. Doing so may affect the underlying K5 IaaS network.</p> <hr/> |          |
| List of Security Group IDs    | Specify as a list the security groups to be applied to the port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| Network ID                    | Specify the ID of the network to which the port will be connected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |
| Availability Zone Name        | Specify the availability zone where the port will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |          |

<sup>4</sup> The filter that is automatically set is designed to block communications except those from the ports with the combinations of MAC and IP address assigned to the virtual server. Using this filter prevents spoofing with a forged sender IP address or MAC address.

## 4.3 Global IP Service

### 4.3.1 Global IP Address Service

You can acquire or release a global IP address that is used to access virtual resources via the Internet. The global IP address that you obtain is assigned to virtual resources and used as a floating IP address.

#### Acquiring a Global IP Address

Specify the port of the assignment destination and obtain the global IP address.

Table 91: List of Global IP Address Settings

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        | Required |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| External Network ID    | Specify the external network ID issued by the system<br> You can confirm the ID in the list of subnet IDs.<br>Tip | Yes      |
| Port ID                | Specify the port to which the global IP address is to be assigned                                                                                                                                  | Yes      |
| Private IP Address     | Specify the private IP address to be replaced with the global IP address                                                                                                                           |          |
| Project ID             | Specify the ID of the project for which the global IP address is to be obtained                                                                                                                    |          |
| Availability Zone Name | Specify the availability zone for which the global IP address is to be obtained. If omitted, a global IP address is obtained for the default availability zone                                     |          |



Note

The global IP address is automatically assigned from the pool of addresses provided by this service. You cannot, for example, specify a range within which to assign the global IP address, or specify and obtain a global IP address of your choice.

#### Changing the Assignment of a Global IP Address

You can specify an existing global IP address and change the assigned port.

Table 92: List of Changeable Fields for Global IP Address

| Item               | Description                                                                      | Required |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Port ID            | Specify the new port to which to assign the global IP address                    | Yes      |
| Private IP Address | Specify the private IP address that is to be replaced with the global IP address |          |

#### Releasing a Global IP Address

You can release a global IP address that you have obtained that is no longer needed.



Warning

After the specified period has lapsed, global IP addresses that have been released might be acquired and reused by other users of the service via global IP address acquisition. Prior to releasing the global IP address, take measures such as erasing the DNS registration in order to prevent communication involving the IP address from unintentionally taking place.

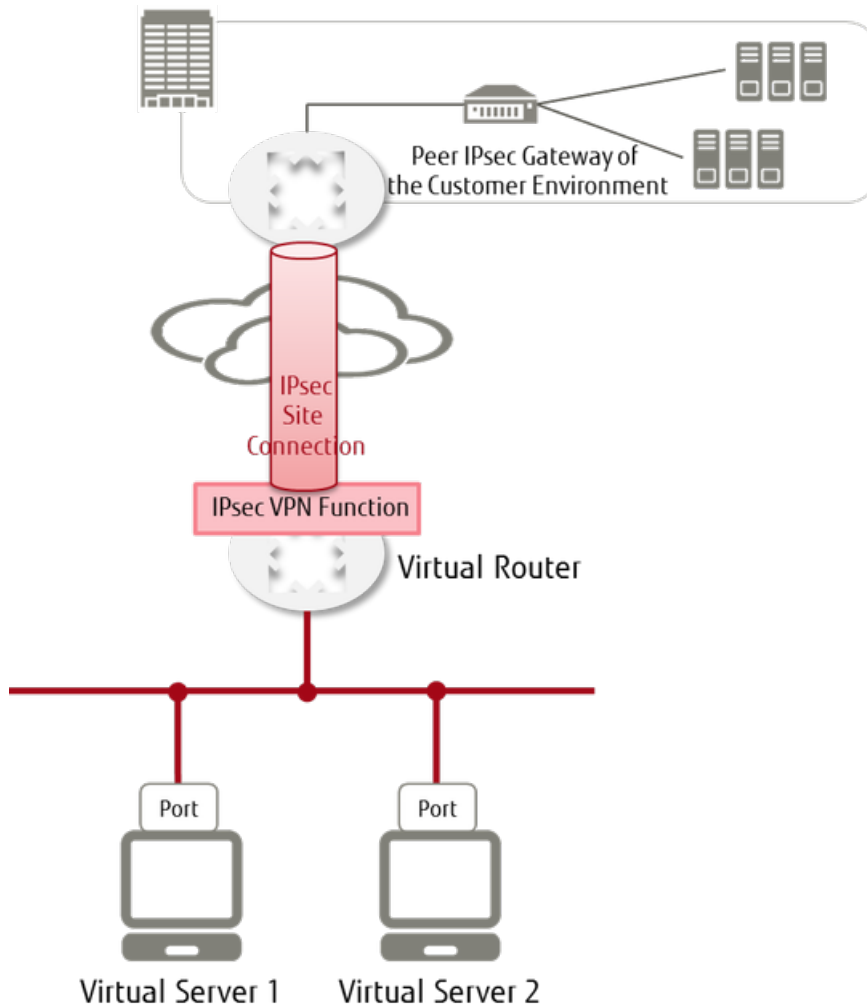
## 4.4 VPN (IPsec VPN)

### 4.4.1 IPsec VPN Function

The IPsec VPN gateway function allows you to connect to on-premises environments or to systems between regions.

If you add the IPsec VPN function to a virtual router, you can connect to a peer IPsec VPN gateway.

Figure 29: Network Connections Using the IPsec VPN Function



Note

Communication is possible through an IPsec VPN tunnel between a single subnet connected directly to a virtual router and a single subnet connected to the peer gateway.



Note

You can create multiple IPsec VPN tunnels on a single virtual router.

## Settings

Table 93: Settings Related to VPN Connections

| Item                              | Supported Methods                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Authentication Method             | Pre-shared key method                 |
| Action When Dead Peer Is Detected | hold, clear, restart, restart by peer |
| DPD Interval                      | 1 second or more                      |
| DPD Timeout                       | A value larger than the DPD interval  |
| Initiator Mode                    | bi-directional, response-only         |

## Settings Related to Supported Encryption Methods

Table 94: IKE Policy

| Item                    | Supported Methods         |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Authorization Algorithm | sha1                      |
| Encryption Algorithm    | AES-128, AES-192, AES-256 |
| IKE version             | V1                        |
| Life Time               | 60 - 86400 (seconds)      |
| PFS                     | group2, 5, 14             |
| Key Exchange Mode       | main                      |

Table 95: IPsec Policy

| Item                    | Supported Methods         |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Authorization Algorithm | sha1                      |
| Capsule Mode            | tunnel                    |
| Encryption Algorithm    | AES-128, AES-192, AES-256 |
| Life Time               | 60 - 86400 (seconds)      |
| PFS                     | group 2, 5, 14            |
| Transformation Protocol | esp                       |

## Points to Note

When the IPsec VPN function is enabled, the communication shown below is allowed regardless of the firewall rule that is set on the virtual router.

Table 96: List of Allowed Communication Rules

| Protocol | Port No. | Description                                                        |
|----------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UDP      | 500      | Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP) |

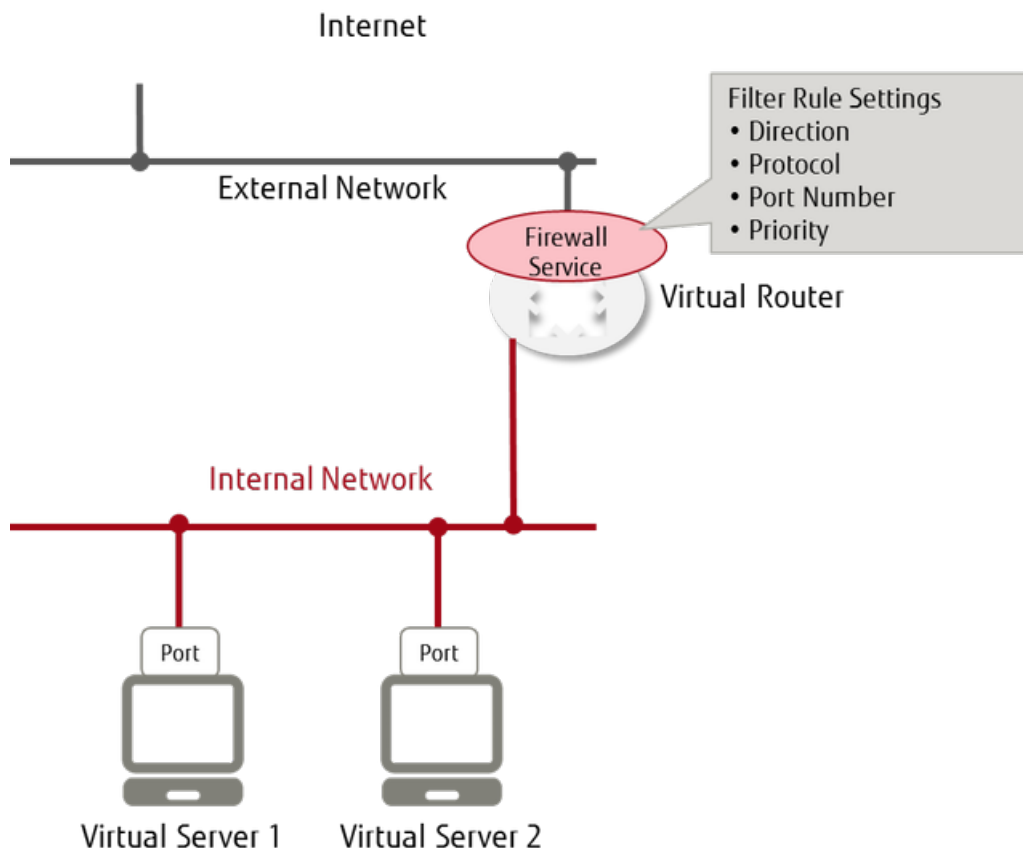
## 4.5 Firewall

### 4.5.1 Firewall Service

While a security group sets packet filters on virtual servers, the firewall service sets packet filters on the virtual router.

You can set this service on the virtual router connected to an external network as shown in the following figure.

Figure 30: Using the Firewall Service



Firewall service settings consist of the following elements and are configured with the information for filtering that is shown below, in the order they are listed. You must associate the firewall with a virtual router in order to perform filtering.

1. Create firewall rules
2. Register a collection of rules to create a firewall policy
3. Specify a policy to create a firewall, and associate it with a virtual router

### Creating/Changing a Firewall Rule

Specify the following items to create or change firewall rules.

Table 97: List of Firewall Rule Settings

| Item        | Description                  | Required |
|-------------|------------------------------|----------|
| Rule Name   | Specify a name for the rule. |          |
| Description | Enter a description.         |          |

| Item                    | Description                                                                                                                        | Required |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Priority                | Specify the order in which policy rules are applied. Inspections are performed in ascending order from the smallest value.         |          |
| Enable/Disable Rule     | Specify whether to enable or disable the rule.                                                                                     |          |
| Protocol                | Specify one of the following protocols: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tcp</li> <li>• udp</li> <li>• icmp</li> </ul>     |          |
| IP Version              | Specify IPv4.                                                                                                                      |          |
| Source IP Address       | Specify the IP address of the sender (can be specified in CIDR notation).                                                          |          |
| Source Port Number      | Specify the port number of the sender targeted for communication (a range can be specified in a:b format).                         |          |
| Destination IP Address  | Specify the IP address of the destination (can be specified in CIDR notation).                                                     |          |
| Destination Port Number | Specify the port number of the destination targeted for communication (a range can be specified in a:b format).                    |          |
| Actions                 | Specify "Allow" or "Deny."                                                                                                         |          |
| Availability Zone Name  | Specify the availability zone where rules will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used. |          |

## Creating/Modifying a Firewall Policy

Define a list of multiple firewall rules as a firewall policy. The traffic is inspected according to the rules in the list, in order of priority, to control whether communication is allowed or not.



Tip

The "DENY ALL" rule is automatically added to the end of the policy. Therefore, traffic that does not meet the definition for any of the Allow rules is blocked by default. (This is the whitelist method.)

The "DENY ALL" rule that is added automatically is an implicit rule, and does not appear in the policy.

Specify the following items to create or modify a firewall policy.

**Table 98: List of Firewall Policy Settings**

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                         | Required |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Policy Name            | Specify a name for the policy.                                                                                                                                      |          |
| Description            | Enter a description.                                                                                                                                                |          |
| List of Firewall Rules | Specify as a list the firewall rules that have been created. Traffic is inspected according to the list of rules specified here, in order from the top of the list. |          |

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                           | Required |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Availability Zone Name | Specify the availability zone where policies will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used. |          |

## Creating/Modifying a Firewall

Create or modify a firewall on a virtual router by specifying a firewall policy in which rules have been registered.

Table 99: List of Firewall Settings

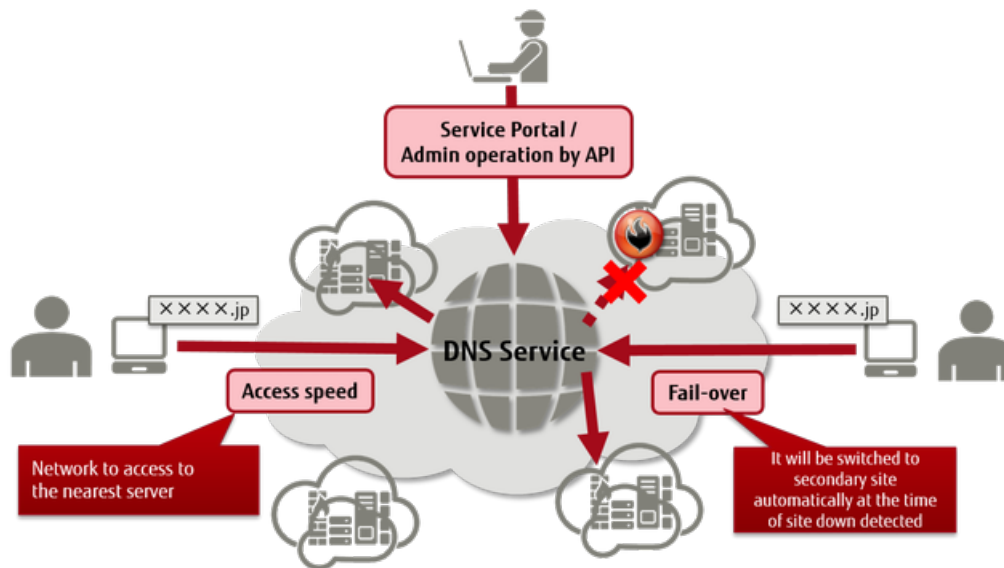
| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Required |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Firewall Name          | Specify a name for the firewall.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |          |
| Description            | Enter a description.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Firewall Policy ID     | Specify the ID of a firewall policy that has been created.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |          |
| Virtual Router ID      | Specify the virtual router ID to which the firewall policy will be applied.<br><div>  <p>If this setting is omitted, the specified policy will be applied to all virtual routers in the availability zone.</p> </div> |          |
| Availability Zone Name | Specify the availability zone where the firewall will be created. If this setting is omitted, the default availability zone will be used.                                                                                                                                                              |          |

## 4.6 DNS Service

### 4.6.1 DNS Service

The DNS service provides an environment for running zone management and record management operations on a DNS content server via Service Portal or an API. You can develop a system that interacts with multiple regions, without the need to build your own DNS server.

Figure 31: Overall Layout of the Functions Provided by the DNS Service



#### Functions Included

- DNS Zone Management Functions
- Record Management Functions
- Failover Function
- Latency-Based Routing Function
- Weighted Round Robin Function

#### Points to Note

- You cannot use a Whois publishing proxy for a domain.
- SOA records cannot be set.
- You cannot set an NS record for the root domain.
- You cannot set an alias for A or AAAA records.
- Dynamic IP record settings (Dynamic DNS) are not supported.
- The zone transfer function is not supported.
- DNSSEC is not supported.

### 4.6.2 DNS Zone Management Functions

Create zones, delete zones, and view the information of zones within the domains that are currently managed.

## Creating a Zone

Create a zone. When you create a zone, an authentication code is required to confirm ownership of the domain.



Important

Select a domain from [Domains That Can Be Registered in a Zone](#) on page 234.



Note

For domains managed by other companies, authentication is required to create a zone again.

## Acquiring Zone Information

Specify a zone name (zone ID) to view the zone information. You can acquire the zone information and the name server information.

## Acquiring Zone Information in Bulk

View zone information in bulk.

Table 100: Acquiring Zone Information in Bulk (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item             | Description                                                                                                                                                                        | Required |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Starting Zone ID | Specify a zone ID to serve as the top of the list of zone information to be viewed. If this setting is omitted, acquisition will start from the beginning of the zone information. |          |
| Number Acquired  | Specify the maximum number of zone information items to acquire. If this setting is omitted, 100 is set.                                                                           |          |

## Deleting a Zone

Specify a zone that is no longer needed and delete it.



Important

When a zone is deleted, all of the records that are set for that zone are also deleted. Deleted zone information cannot be viewed or restored.



Note

The domain still exists after a zone is deleted.

## Limiting Values

Table 101: List of Limiting Values Related to DNS Zone Management

| Item                                                               | Limiting Values     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Number of DNS Zones Registered                                     | 100 per domain      |
| Time To Live (TTL) for Cache that Can Be Specified                 | 60 - 86,400 seconds |
| Maximum Number of Records for Bulk Acquisition of Zone Information | 100 records         |

## 4.6.3 Record Management Functions

Create, modify, and delete DNS records, and view the information contained in these records.

### Creating/Modifying/Deleting a Record

You can create, modify, and delete the following types of records. You can execute the same request on multiple records at the same time.

- NS
- A
- AAAA
- CNAME
- MX
- TXT
- PTR
- LBR (latency-based routing)



Note

Record operations are not executed immediately. They are executed when the status information included in the response changes to "INSYNC."

### Limiting Values

Table 102: List of Limiting Values Related to DNS Record Management

| Item                                    | Limiting Values             |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Number of Records that Can Be Specified | 10,000 per zone             |
| Supported Record Type                   | A, AAAA, CNAME, MX, NS, TXT |
| Record Type with Wildcard Support       | A, AAAA, MX, CNAME, TXT     |

Table 103: List of Limiting Values for DNS Record Entries

| Record Type | Item        | Limitations                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A           | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@) |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)<br>Must be a valid IPv4 address                                         |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
|             | Weight      | 0 - 100<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                                                |

| Record Type | Item                     | Limitations                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | Health Check IP Address  | Length: 1 - 32 characters<br>Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)                                                                      |
|             | Health Check Port Number | Length: 1 - 5 characters<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                               |
|             | Health Check Host Name   | Length: 0 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Single-byte characters                                                         |
|             | Health Check Path        | Available character type: Single-byte characters                                                                                       |
| AAAA        | Record Name              | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@)                           |
|             | TTL                      | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value                    | Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)<br>Must be a valid IPv6 address                                                                   |
|             | Memo                     | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
|             | Weight                   | 0 - 100<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                                                |
|             | Health Check IP Address  | Length: 1 - 32 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)                                            |
|             | Health Check Port Number | Length: 1 - 5 characters<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                               |
|             | Health Check Host Name   | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Single-byte characters                                                         |
|             | Health Check Path        | Available character type: Single-byte characters                                                                                       |
| CNAME       | Record Name              | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@) |
|             | TTL                      | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value                    | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, multi-byte domains, dots (.), and hyphens (-)         |

| Record Type | Item        | Limitations                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
| MX          | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@)                           |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, multi-byte domains, dots (.), and hyphens (-)         |
|             | Priority    | 0 - 64000<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                                              |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
| TXT         | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@) |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Alphanumeric characters, single-byte spaces, and single-byte symbols other than double quotation marks (")                             |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
| NS          | Record Name | Character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), and hyphens (-)                                                                     |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, multi-byte domains, dots (.), and hyphens (-)                                       |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
| LBR         | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), and hyphens (-)                              |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters                                                                                                             |

| Record Type | Item | Limitations                                      |
|-------------|------|--------------------------------------------------|
|             |      | Available character type: Double-byte characters |

## Points to Note

- You cannot set more than one record of the same record type and with the same value for the same host name.
- You cannot set CNAME and other records for the same host name at the same time.
- You cannot set LBR and other records for the same host name at the same time.
- The following DNS records cannot be set:
  - Records that are not in FQDN format
  - Records with a dot (.) or hyphen (-) at the beginning or end of the record name
- SOA record settings cannot be changed.
- You cannot set an NS record for the root domain.
- Dynamic IP record settings (Dynamic DNS) are not supported.
- DNSSEC is not supported.

## 4.6.4 Failover Function

When the health check function is used on an end point that can be set by the user, the normal record information is returned if the health check is successful. However, if the health check indicates abnormality, the record information on the standby side is returned and traffic to the server where abnormality occurred is blocked.

Table 104: Failover Settings

| Item      | Description                                                        |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary   | Specify only a single record. You cannot specify multiple records. |
| Secondary | You can specify multiple records.                                  |



Only A and AAAA records can be used.

Note

Table 105: Health Check Destination Settings

| Item       | Description                                                                                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Protocol   | Select HTTP, HTTPS, or TCP.                                                                                 |
| IP Address | The values entered for the IP address are shown. This item can be changed.                                  |
| Port No.   | 80 is shown for HTTP, 443 is shown for HTTPS. This item can be changed.                                     |
| Host Name  | Displayed when HTTP or HTTPS is selected for the protocol. Enter the host information from the HTTP header. |

| Item | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Path | Displayed when HTTP or HTTPS is selected for the protocol. Enter the path section of the URL targeted for health check.                            |
| URL  | A URL that consists of the IP address, port number, and path is displayed when HTTP or HTTPS is selected for the protocol. This cannot be changed. |



#### Health Check Rules

- Note
- The individual health checks that are specified for each record are run.
  - Health check is performed at 5-minute intervals. Until the first health check is performed immediately after record registration, both primary and secondary records are returned as a valid record.
  - When a failover occurs, a host swithes over to the other host that that has the same Name tag and same Type tag in the group.
  - If multiple records are specified for [Secondary], priority is given to the record that was registered first.
  - The status for records that have been set is Enabled if there is a response from the DNS, and Standby if there is no response.
  - If an abnormality is detected by a health check both in primary and secondary records, the primary record is returned.

### Points to Note

- When you use a failover, 60 seconds is recommended for TTL for records.

## 4.6.5 Latency-Based Routing Function

This function allows the system to connect to the closest server by returning the record information that is set for that area, based on the access source information for the DNS server.

Table 106: Latency-Based Routing Settings

| Item        |              | Description                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Record Name |              | Enter the host name of the server at the access destination.                                                                                                              |
| Value       | Default Host | Specify the value to return if there is access from somewhere other than the specified area. Select a value from an A or AAAA record that is registered in the same zone. |
|             | Area         | Specify the closest area.                                                                                                                                                 |
|             | Host         | Specify the value to return if there is access from the specified area. Select a value from an A or AAAA record that is registered in the same zone.                      |

## Points to Note

---

- If the client accesses the server via a DNS cache server or resolver, the IP address of the DNS cache server or resolver is used as the IP address of the source.

## 4.6.6 Weighted Round Robin Function

---

This function provides uneven round robin distribution by using hit counts according to the weight value for each record. This allows greater flexibility in access dispersion.

Table 107: Weighted Round Robin Settings

| Item         | Description                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Weight Value | Specify the hit rate (from 0 to 100) for each record. The hit rate for a record will fluctuate according to the weight value that is specified. |
| Target       | Distribution is performed on the hosts that have the same Name tag and same Type tag in the group.                                              |



This function can be used only for A or AAAA records.

Note

---

## Points to Note

---

- If there are no records with a weight of 100, a target record might not be returned during name resolution.
- If the weight is set to 0, the hit rate will also be 0 and therefore no value is returned.
- During normal record registration, if records are registered with the same host and same record type, a weight of 100 is applied.

## 4.7 Load Balancer

### 4.7.1 Load Balancer Service

Create a load balancer within a network to distribute traffic to your virtual servers.

The load balancer service provides the following functions.

#### Creating a Load Balancer

Create a load balancer by configuring the following settings according to how you will use load distribution. When a load balancer is created, a unique FQDN will be assigned. Use this FQDN to ensure continuous operation that is unaffected by increases or decreases in the number of servers targeted for load distribution.



**Tip** If you register multiple subnets with different availability zones on the load balancer, the load will be distributed across the availability zones.

Table 108: Load Balancer (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Required |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Load Balancer Name                                                       | Specify a name to identify the load balancer<br> The name must be unique within the project.<br><small>Note</small>                                                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |
| Load Balancer Type                                                       | Specify one of the following types, according to the purpose: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• public: Load distribution of traffic from the Internet</li><li>• internal: Load distribution within a private network only</li></ul>                                                                                                                                           | Yes      |
| List of <a href="#">Load Distribution Condition Settings</a> on page 127 | Specify load distribution conditions regarding what traffic to distribute. You can specify multiple conditions as a list.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |
| List of Security Groups                                                  | Specify as a list the security group IDs that are set on the load balancer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |          |
| List of Subnets                                                          | Specify the IDs of the subnets to which the virtual server targeted for load distribution is connected, as a list.<br> <small>Important</small> To distribute the load of traffic from the Internet, the virtual router that the subnet is connected to must be connected to an external network. | Yes      |
| Grade                                                                    | Specify one of the following levels of performance for the load balancer: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Standard: Standard performance</li><li>• Middle: Intermediate performance</li><li>• High: High performance</li></ul>                                                                                                                                               |          |

## Operations on a Load Balancer

- [Adding/Deleting a Target for Load Distribution](#) on page 130
- [Multi-Availability Zone Distribution](#) on page 130
- [Monitoring for Abnormality on a Load Distribution Target](#) on page 131

## Deleting a Load Balancer

Specify and delete an existing load balancer.

## Security

If you create a load balancer that can communicate via the Internet, the front end will be public on the Internet. To prevent attacks via the Internet, create the necessary security group and configure it on the load balancer in advance.

## Limiting Values

Table 109: List of Limiting Values Related to the Load Balancer Service

| Item                             | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Load Balancer Name               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Length: 1 - 30 characters</li><li>• Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and hyphens (-)</li></ul> |
| Number of Load Balancers Created | 20 per project                                                                                                                                          |
| Number of Policies Created       | 100 per load balancer                                                                                                                                   |
| Maximum Number of Connections    | 32,768 per subnet                                                                                                                                       |

## 4.7.2 Load Distribution Condition Settings

Set the traffic conditions for load distribution when creating a load balancer or for an existing load balancer.

To set the traffic conditions for load distribution, use a "listener" to determine how the traffic that has reached the front-end port communicates with the back-end port.

## Creating/Modifying a Listener

When creating a load balancer, configure the following settings to create a listener. You can also specify the name of an existing load balancer to create a new listener or modify an existing one.

You can specify an SSL certificate for a listener, to terminate HTTPS communication.



Note

To use an SSL certificate, you must use the [key management](#) function to register the certificate in advance.

Table 110: List of Listener Settings

| Item     | Description                                                                                                                           | Required |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Protocol | Specify the front-end and back-end communication protocols.                                                                           | Yes      |
|          |  Only the following combinations can be specified: |          |

| Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Required |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HTTP - HTTP</li> <li>• HTTPS-HTTP (*1)</li> <li>• HTTPS-HTTPS (*1)</li> <li>• TCP - TCP</li> <li>• SSL-TCP (*1)</li> <li>• SSL-SSL (*1)</li> </ul> <p>*1: For information about supported SSL protocols and SSL cipher suites, refer to Appendix <a href="#">Predefined Security Policies</a> on page 236.</p>                                                                         |          |
| Front-end Port No. | Specify the front-end port number (1 - 65535).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Yes      |
| Back-end Port No.  | Specify the TCP port number (1 - 65535) for the virtual server at the distribution destination.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Yes      |
| SSL Certificate ID | <p>Specify the ID of the server certificate registered using the key management function.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> Only one server certificate can be specified for each listener. If you set a different server certificate than the one that has been specified for a given port, the certificate that was set most recently is enabled.</p> |          |

## Managing Listener Policies

You can register, modify, and delete the policies that are applied to a listener. The following types of policies can be applied:

- Session persistence policy

If this policy is specified, cookie information that identifies the virtual server that is targeted for load distribution is embedded in the response packet. When this cookie information is sent in a request from the client, the load balancer distributes the load to the virtual server to which the first access was allocated.



This policy can be applied only if an HTTP/HTTPS listener is specified.

Note

Specify the following settings to register the session persistence policy:

Table 111: List of Settings for the Session Persistence Policy

| Item               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Required |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Load Balancer Name | Specify the name of the load balancer to set for the session persistence policy.                                                                                                                                             | Yes      |
| Policy Name        | <p>Specify a name for the session persistence policy to be created.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> The name must be unique in the load balancer.</p> | Yes      |

| Item                       | Description                                                                                                            | Required |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Session Persistence Period | Specify the maximum amount of time in seconds (1 - 2,147,483,647) for a session for session persistence using cookies. |          |

- Sorry page redirect policy

Set the redirect information to be used if abnormality is detected on the virtual server targeted for load distribution during a health check and there is no other virtual server that is available for load distribution.



This policy can be applied only if an HTTP/HTTPS listener is specified.

Note

Specify the following settings to register the sorry page redirect policy:

**Table 112: List of Settings for the Sorry Page Redirect Policy**

| Item                     | Description                                                                                                             | Required |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Load Balancer Name       | Specify the name of the load balancer for which to set the redirect policy.                                             | Yes      |
| Redirect Policy Name     | Specify a name for the policy to be created.<br>The name must be unique in the load balancer.<br>Note                   | Yes      |
| Redirect Destination URI | Specify the URI for the redirect destination.<br>This is set as the Location information for redirect responses.<br>Tip | Yes      |

- Security policy

This policy sets the SSL protocol that is applied for HTTPS or SSL to the protocol of listener settings. You can create up to 100 policies for one load balancer.

Specify the following settings to register or modify a security policy.

**Table 113: List of Security Policy Settings**

| Item                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Required |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Load Balancer Name                                              | Specify the name of the load balancer for which to configure the security policy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Yes      |
| Enable SSL Protocol (list of attributes related to policy name) | Enable (true) or disable (false) SSL separately for each protocol. The SSL protocols that can be configured are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SSL 3.0 (default setting: disabled)</li> <li>• TLS1.0 (default setting: disabled)</li> <li>• TLS1.1 (default setting: enabled)</li> <li>• TLS1.2 (default setting: enabled)</li> </ul> For information about the SSL cipher suites that can be used for each SSL protocol, refer | Yes      |

| Item        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Required |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|             | to Appendix <i>Predefined Security Policies</i> on page 236.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Policy Name | Specify the name of the security policy to create.<br> Note The name must be unique in the load balancer.                                                                                     | Yes      |
| Policy Type | Specify the following policy type:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SSLNegotiationPolicyType</li> </ul> A policy related to the SSL encryption protocol. This policy can be set to listeners where the protocol that is set to "Protocol" begins with HTTPS or SSL. | Yes      |

## 4.7.3 Adding/Deleting a Target for Load Distribution

Add or delete a virtual server to target for load distribution in order to distribute the load of the traffic that has reached the load balancer.



The load distribution algorithm for virtual servers is the "less connections" algorithm.

Important

### Adding a Virtual Server to Target for Load Distribution

Add a virtual server to target for load distribution. You can specify multiple virtual servers and register them all at once.



Before you add a virtual server to target for load distribution, the virtual server must be in an operating state.

Important



If you change the IP address of a virtual server that has already been registered, load distribution will not be performed for the new IP address. Register the server again to include it as a target for load distribution.

Warning

### Deleting a Virtual Server Targeted for Load Distribution

Delete a virtual server that has been set as a target for load distribution. You can specify multiple virtual servers and delete them all at once.



Before you delete a virtual server that is targeted for load distribution, the virtual server must be in a stopped state.

Important

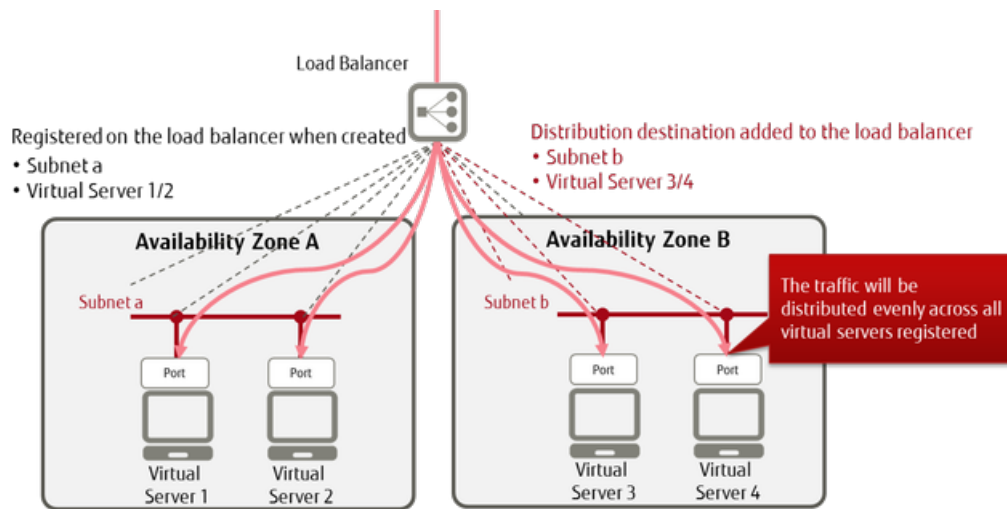
## 4.7.4 Multi-Availability Zone Distribution

If you register multiple subnets on a single load balancer, the load can be distributed across the availability zones.

If you specify multiple subnets with different availability zones on a load balancer, the traffic will be allocated across the availability zones.

In this case, because the load balancer is a single point of failure, you can connect multiple load balancers with a higher-level DNS service to improve distribution performance and availability.

Figure 32: Load Distribution when Connecting Multiple Availability Zones



## 4.7.5 Monitoring for Abnormality on a Load Distribution Target

Set the conditions for performing a health check on the virtual server targeted for load distribution.

### Setting Health Check Conditions for Virtual Servers Targeted for Load Distribution

Configure the following settings as the conditions for checking whether a virtual server targeted for load distribution responds normally.

Table 114: List of Health Check Condition Settings

| Item                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Required |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Method                                                           | <p>Select the method for monitoring the virtual server targeted for load distribution.</p> <p>Use the following format: "protocol:port[url]"</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>protocol: Specify either TCP or HTTP</li> <li>port: Specify a port from 1 to 65535</li> <li>url: Specify the URL path (optional)</li> </ul> | Yes      |
| Interval (seconds)                                               | Specify the interval for performing health checks, in seconds (1 - 2,147,483,647).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Yes      |
| Timeout (seconds)                                                | <p>Specify the time to wait for a response to a health check before a timeout occurs, in seconds (1 - 2,147,483,647).</p> <p> <b>Important</b> Specify a value that is lower than the value for [Interval (seconds)].</p>                        | Yes      |
| Consecutive Detection of Abnormality Threshold (number of times) | Specify the number of consecutive health check failures that constitute occurrence of a failure on a target virtual                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Yes      |

| Item                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Required |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|                                                                | server, and thus warrants exclusion of the virtual server as a target for load distribution (1 - 2,147,483,647).                                                                                                          |          |
| Consecutive Detection of Normality Threshold (number of times) | Specify the number of consecutive health check successes that constitute the recovery of a target virtual server and thus warrants inclusion of the virtual server as a target for load distribution (1 - 2,147,483,647). | Yes      |

## 4.8 Network Connector

### 4.8.1 Network Connector Service

While virtual routers connect to networks that exist within the availability zone, the network connector service provides the function to connect to networks that exist outside the availability zone.

In order to achieve network communication between availability zones, create and connect network connectors and connector endpoints.

The network connector service is used to provide the following connection services:

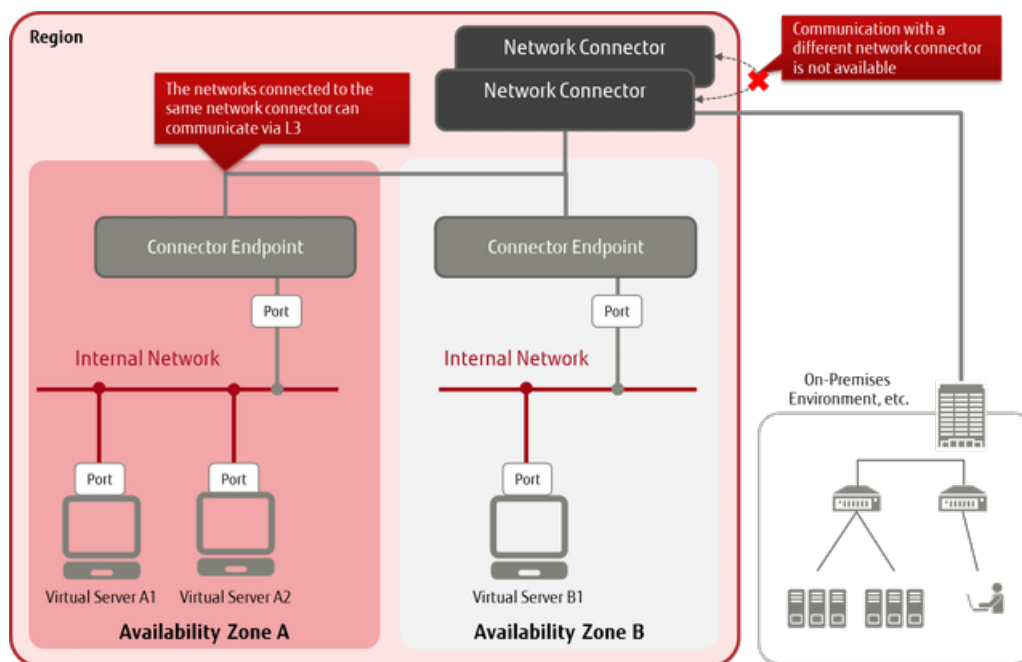
- Intranet connections
- Hosting connections



Important

In order to use the network connector service to connect to an external network, settings must be configured on the center side in advance. Contact the service provider for assistance.

Figure 33: Using the Network Connector Service



The following functions are provided in the network connector service.

### Acquiring the Network Connector Pool Information

When creating a network connector, you can view the network connector pool information provided by the system in advance.

## Creating a Network Connector

Set the following items to create a network connector.

Table 115: Creating a Network Connector (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                      | Description                                                                                  | Required |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Network Connector Name    | Specify a name that uniquely identifies the network connector.                               | Yes      |
| Network Connector Pool ID | Specify the ID of the network connector pool in which the network connector will be created. |          |
| Project ID                | Specify the ID of your project.                                                              |          |

## Viewing the Network Connector Information

You can view a list of created network connectors and their settings.

## Modifying a Network Connector

Specify the ID of a network connector that has been created to modify its settings.

Table 116: Modifying a Network Connector (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                   | Description                                                    | Required |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Network Connector Name | Specify a name that uniquely identifies the network connector. |          |

## Deleting a Network Connector

Specify a network connector that is no longer needed and delete it.

## Creating a Connector Endpoint

Set the following items to create a connector endpoint.



Important

To create a remote connector endpoint, create an "availability\_zone" type endpoint. Then, contact the service provider for assistance.

Table 117: Creating a Connector Endpoint (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Required |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Connector Endpoint Name | Specify a name to uniquely identify the connector endpoint.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |
| Network Connector ID    | Specify the ID of the network connector that contains the connector endpoint that you want to use for intercommunication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Yes      |
| Type                    | <p>Specify a type according to the network that you will connect to the connector endpoint. The user must specify "availability_zone."</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• availability_zone: When connecting to a K5 IaaS network</li><li>• remote: When connecting to an external network other than a K5 IaaS service</li></ul> | Yes      |

| Item                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Required |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Creation Destination Information | Specify the following values according to the type specified above. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For "availability_zone": Specify the name of the availability zone where the network to which the connector endpoint connects exists.</li> <li>For "remote": Specify an identifier to use as a label. For example, specify "intranet."</li> </ul> | Yes      |
| Project ID                       | Specify the ID of your project.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |          |

## Viewing the Connector Endpoint Information

You can view a list of created connector endpoints and their settings.

## Modifying a Connector Endpoint

Specify the ID of a connector endpoint that has been created to change its settings.

Table 118: Modifying a Connector Endpoint (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                    | Description                                                       | Required |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Connector Endpoint Name | Specify the name that uniquely identifies the connector endpoint. |          |

## Deleting a Connector Endpoint

Delete a connector endpoint that is no longer needed by specifying the ID.

## Connecting a Connector Endpoint to a Network

Specify the ID of an existing connector endpoint to connect to a network.

- If the connector endpoint type is "availability\_zone"

Specify the ID of a port on the subnet that you want to connect to the connector endpoint.



You must create the network, subnet, and port to be connected in advance.

Note

- If the connector endpoint type is "remote"



Important

This connection cannot be configured by the user alone. Contact the service provider for assistance.

## Viewing the Connection Information for a Connector Endpoint and Network

Specify the ID of an existing connector endpoint to view the information for the network interface to which it is connected.

## Releasing a Network Connection from a Connector Endpoint

Specify the ID of an existing connector endpoint to release its network connection.

- If the connector endpoint type is "availability\_zone"

View the connection information for the connector endpoint, and specify the IDs of ports that are no longer needed to delete them.

- If the connector endpoint type is "remote"



Important

Connections cannot be released by the user. Contact the service provider for assistance.

---

# Part 5: Database

---

## Topics:

- [\*Overview of Functions\*](#)
- [\*Building a Database\*](#)
- [\*Managing a Database\*](#)

K5 IaaS provides virtual servers equipped with the relational database function. By accessing this platform via the Internet, the user can set up and operate a relational database.

## 5.1 Overview of Functions

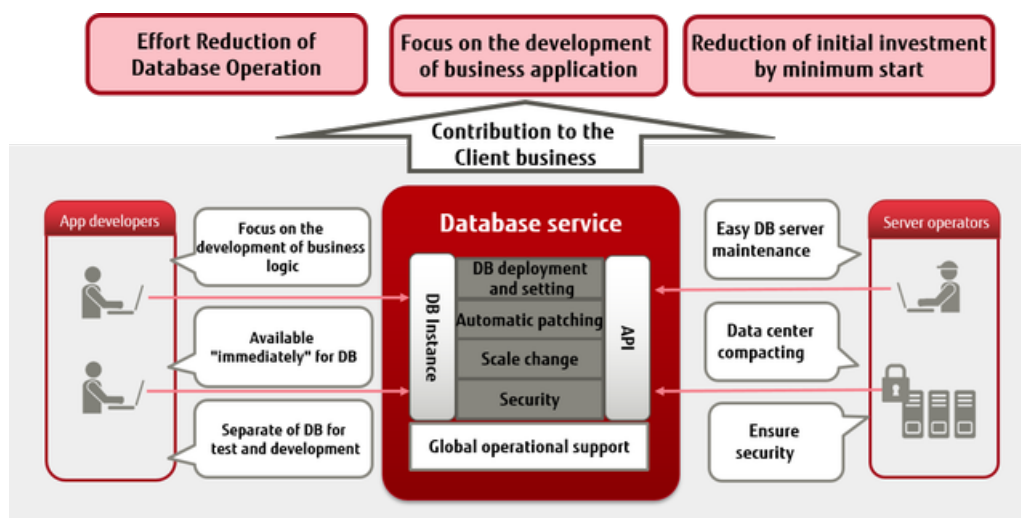
### 5.1.1 Database as a Service

Database as a Service facilitates setup and operations (such as scaling or backup) of cloud-based relational databases. Database as a Service reduces the burden on customers through use of an active-standby configuration that is constructed in environments that are physically separated, and automatic backups to cloud storage.

#### Benefits for Users

Users can utilize this service only when needed, and can use the database environment immediately whenever it is needed. In addition, users can leave the time-consuming operations to the side that provides the services, so that users can focus on developing business applications.

Figure 34: Value Provided By Database as a Service



#### Available Database Engines

Shown below is the compatibility information from the application perspective regarding database engines that are provided by this service. Use this service with applications intended for the products of the version levels included in the following table.

Table 119: Compatibility Information for Database Engines

| Product Name                        | Compatible Versions and Levels | Remarks                  |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Symfoware Server Enterprise Edition | V12.1                          | The same SQL can be used |
| PostgreSQL                          | 9.2.4                          | The same SQL can be used |

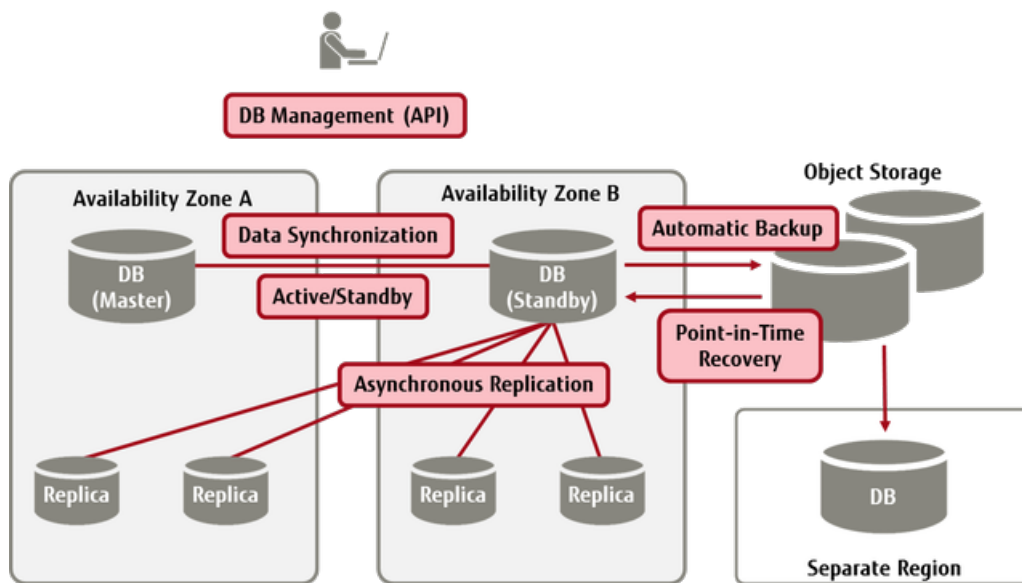
## 5.2 Building a Database

### 5.2.1 Creating a Virtual Database Server

In order to use a relational database environment, create virtual database servers. You can select the virtual database servers to create from various types according to the level of performance that is required, and you can configure settings such as automatic backups, as well.

Functions to enhance the performance, availability, and reliability are provided based on the virtual database servers that are created.

Figure 35: Overall Layout of Database as a Service



### Virtual Database Server Settings

Configure the virtual database servers to be created.

- Specification of the virtual database server name
- Selection of the virtual database server type

Table 120: List of Provided Virtual Server Types (Flavors)

| Type Name | Number of Virtual CPUs | Memory (GB) |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| C-2       | 2                      | 4           |
| C-4       | 4                      | 8           |
| C-8       | 8                      | 16          |
| C-16      | 16                     | 32          |
| S-1       | 1                      | 4           |
| S-2       | 2                      | 8           |
| S-4       | 4                      | 16          |
| S-8       | 8                      | 32          |
| S-16      | 16                     | 64          |
| M-1       | 1                      | 8           |

| Type Name | Number of Virtual CPUs | Memory (GB) |
|-----------|------------------------|-------------|
| M-2       | 2                      | 16          |
| M-4       | 4                      | 32          |
| M-8       | 8                      | 64          |
| M-16      | 16                     | 128         |
| XM-4      | 4                      | 128         |

- Specification of the name of the availability zone where the server will be created
- Specification of the [DB subnet group](#)
- Specification of the [DB parameter group](#)

## Data Area Settings

Specify the disk capacity and disk type that is used for the data area. Select the disk capacity from 10 GB to 10 TB, and the disk type from the following types.

Table 121: List of Disk Types

| Type     | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard | Use this in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you deploy application data that requires frequent file access (reading and writing)</li> <li>• When you handle a lot of large data files</li> </ul> |

## Redundancy Settings

- Multi-DB option (Enable or Disable)
- Multi-AZ option (Enable or Disable)

Table 122: Combination of Redundancy Settings

|                 |         | Multi-DB Option |        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                 |         | Disable         | Enable |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Multi-AZ Option | Disable | ✓               | ✓      | The standby virtual database server is created within the same availability zone, according to the multi-DB option setting.<br><hr/>  <b>Important</b> If the region has only one availability zone, be sure to specify "Disable."<br><hr/> |
|                 | Enable  | -               | ✓      | The standby virtual database server is created within another availability zone.<br><hr/>  <b>Important</b> If "Enable" is specified for the multi-AZ option, be sure to specify "Enable" for the multi-DB option as well.<br><hr/>         |

After the standby virtual database server is created, data is duplicated from the active server to the standby server synchronously, which ensures data redundancy.



Note

- Data is duplicated from the data area connected to the virtual database server, on a per-data area basis.
- Data cannot be read from the standby server.
- As data is duplicated synchronously, write performance may be affected compared to when the redundancy settings are disabled.

## Automatic Backup Settings

Configure automatic backup settings to perform a daily full backup of data and configuration files on the virtual database server. Items that you can specify are as follows.

Table 123: Settings for Automatic Backup

| Item                    | Description                                                                                         |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Backup time             | Specify a specific time as the start time of the backup (specify the time in UTC)                   |
| Backup retention period | Specify in the range from 0 to 10 (days). If you specify 0, automatic backup will not be performed. |

## Automatic Maintenance Settings

You can set maintenance (such as security updates, or application of software patches) to be performed automatically every week. You can also select whether or not to perform automatic maintenance.

Items that you can specify are as follows.

Table 124: Settings for Automatic Maintenance

| Item                  | Description                                                                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maintenance time      | Specify a specific time as the start time of maintenance (specify the time in UTC) |
| Automatic maintenance | Specify whether or not to perform automatic maintenance                            |

## Automatic Minor Version Upgrade Settings

Specify enable (true) or disable (false) to specify whether to perform version upgrade automatically when a minor version upgrade of the database engine is released.

## Access Control

The [\*security group\*](#) function controls access to virtual database servers.

## Database Settings

Configure settings for the database management master user, character codes, and other settings.

Table 125: Database Settings

| Item                                   | Description                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Master user name                       | Specify the database management user name                                                             |
| Master user password                   | Specify the password for the database management user                                                 |
| List of users for database connections | Specify as a list the user name, password, and the name of the database to which the user can connect |
| Character code                         | Specify the character code that is used in the database                                               |

## Points to Note

- Because virtual database servers are managed by the system, you cannot log in to virtual database servers by using SSH or remote desktop.

## 5.2.2 DB Subnet Groups

Create the network information that is used to create and control virtual database servers as a DB subnet group. In order to ensure the availability of databases, register two or more subnets that exist in different availability zones.



You must create a subnet before you can register it in the DB subnet group.

Note

## Creating a DB Subnet Group

Create a DB subnet group by specifying the parameters as shown below.

Table 126: Creating a DB Subnet Group (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Required |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| DB subnet group ID   | <p>Specify a DB subnet group ID. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Use alphanumeric characters and hyphens</li><li>Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li><li>You cannot use a hyphen as the last character</li><li>You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li><li>Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 63 characters</li></ul> <p> If you omit the ID, random characters will be set.</p> <p>Note</p> |          |
| DB subnet group name | <p>Specify a name to identify the DB subnet group. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications:</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Yes      |

| Item        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Required |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use alphanumeric characters and hyphens</li> <li>• Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li> <li>• You cannot use a hyphen as the last character</li> <li>• You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> <li>• Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 255 characters</li> </ul>                                                             |          |
| Subnet list | Specify as a list the subnets to register in the DB subnet group<br><hr/>  The specification of subnets must meet the following conditions:<br>Note <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two or more subnets are specified</li> <li>• Each subnet that you specify belongs to a different availability zone</li> </ul> <hr/> | Yes      |
| Description | Specify a description for the DB subnet group                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |

## Acquiring the DB Subnet Group List

Acquire a list of the DB subnet groups in the project.

## Checking the DB Subnet Group Information

Check the information of the DB subnet group, such as which subnets are registered, by specifying the ID of the DB subnet group in the project.

## Modifying a DB Subnet Group

Change the following settings by specifying the ID of the DB subnet group in the project.

Table 127: Modifying a DB Subnet Group (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Required |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| DB subnet group ID   | Specify the DB subnet group ID. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use alphanumeric characters and hyphens</li> <li>• Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li> <li>• You cannot use a hyphen as the last character</li> <li>• You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> <li>• Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 63 characters</li> </ul> <hr/>  If you omit the ID, random characters will be set.<br>Note |          |
| DB subnet group name | Specify a name to identify the DB subnet group. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use alphanumeric characters and hyphens</li> <li>• Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li> <li>• You cannot use a hyphen as the last character</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |          |

| Item        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Required |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> <li>Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 255 characters</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| Subnet list | Specify as a list the subnets to register in the DB subnet group<br><hr/>  Note The specification of subnets must meet the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two or more subnets are specified</li> <li>Each subnet belongs to different availability zones</li> </ul> <hr/> |          |
| Description | Specify a description for the DB subnet group                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |

## Deleting a DB Subnet Group

Specify the ID of a DB subnet group in the project to delete a DB subnet group that is no longer necessary.



Note

Even if you delete the DB subnet group, the subnets that are registered in it will not be deleted.

## 5.2.3 DB Parameter Groups

A DB parameter group is a definition that sets various parameters for the database engine when you create a virtual database server.

Since the parameters you can specify depend on the database engine and the version, perform tuning after you create a DB parameter group by changing the parameters that are created under the DB parameter group.

### Creating a DB Parameter Group

Create a DB parameter group by specifying the parameters as shown below.

Table 128: Creating a DB Parameter Group (List of Items That Can Be Specified)

| Item                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Required |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Parameter group family | Specify the type of parameter group, which is determined by the database engine and the version. You can specify the following value: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>symfoware_v12.1</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Yes      |
| DB parameter group ID  | Specify the ID of the DB parameter group. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use alphanumeric characters and hyphens</li> <li>Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li> <li>You cannot use a hyphen as the last character</li> <li>You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> <li>Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 63 characters</li> </ul> |          |

| Item                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Required |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|                         |  If you omit the ID, random characters will be set.<br>Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| DB parameter group name | Specify a name to identify the DB parameter group. The characters that you specify must meet the following specifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use alphanumeric characters and hyphens</li> <li>• Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li> <li>• You cannot use a hyphen as the last character</li> <li>• You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> <li>• Specify at least 1 character, and no more than 255 characters</li> </ul> | Yes      |
| Description             | Specify a description for the DB parameter group                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |          |

## Acquiring the DB Parameter Group List

Acquire a list of the DB parameter groups in the project.

## Checking DB Parameter Group Information

Check the detailed information of the DB parameter group by specifying the ID of the DB parameter group in the project. You can check the following items of each parameter that can be specified for a database.

Table 129: Each Parameter Item That Can Be Checked

| Item                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Parameter name                             | Check the parameter names that can be specified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Parameter value                            | Check the current setting value that corresponds to the parameter name.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Parameter value range                      | Check the range of values that can be parameter values.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Parameter application method               | Check the time when the parameter value is to be applied. The following choices for timing are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• immediate: The value is applied immediately</li> <li>• reboot: The value is applied when the virtual database server is restarted.</li> </ul> |
| Parameter data type                        | Check the data type of the parameter value (example: Integer, String).                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Description                                | Check the description of the parameter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Flags that indicate changeability          | Check whether or not the parameter value can be changed. "FALSE" indicates that it cannot be changed                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Lowest version that supports the parameter | Check what the lowest version that supports the parameter in the parameter group family is.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Source of the default value                | Check where the default value is set from. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• engine: Default value that is provided by the database engine</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                     |

| Item | Description                                                                                           |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>system: Default value that is set by K5 IaaS system</li> </ul> |

## Changing a DB Parameter Value

In order to change the parameter value to be set on the database, include in the DB parameter group the parameter that you want to modify, and modify the DB parameter group information. You cannot modify parameter values by specifying only individual parameters.

Table 130: Items That Can Be Changed for Each Parameter

| Item                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Parameter name               | Specify the parameter whose value you want to change. Specify the parameter name that is specified in the information of the DB parameter group                                                                                                                                                  |
| Parameter value              | Specify the value that you want to change the parameter value to. Specify a value in the parameter value range that is specified in the information of the DB parameter group                                                                                                                    |
| Parameter application method | Specify the time when the parameter value is applied. The following choices for timing are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>immediate: The value is applied immediately</li> <li>pending-reboot: The value is applied when the virtual database server is restarted.</li> </ul> |



You can modify a maximum of 20 parameters per request.

Note

## Deleting a DB Parameter Group

Specify the ID of a DB parameter group in the project to delete a DB parameter group that is no longer necessary.

## 5.3 Managing a Database

### 5.3.1 Database Operations

This section describes functions that can be used after you put virtual database servers into operation.

#### Changing Database Settings

The settings specified when virtual database servers are created can be changed later. As shown in the following table, you may need to restart the virtual database servers in order to apply the changed settings.

Table 131: Settings That Can Be Changed

| Settings                                              | Description                                                                              | Restarting of Virtual Database Servers                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Database engine version                               | Changes the version of the database engine                                               | Necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Virtual database server type                          | Changes the virtual database server type                                                 | Necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Database capacity expansion, or changing of disk type | Increases the data block storage capacity, or changes the disk type                      | Necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Redundancy settings                                   | Changes the redundancy settings of virtual database servers                              | Not necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Security group settings                               | Changes the security group information that is set on virtual database servers           | Not necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Automatic backup time                                 | Changes the time when automatic backup is performed                                      | Not necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Backup retention period                               | Changes the backup retention period                                                      | Not necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Automatic maintenance                                 | Changes whether or not to perform automatic maintenance                                  | Not necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Automatic maintenance time                            | Changes the time when automatic maintenance is performed                                 | Not necessary<br> Note Restarting is not necessary when you change the setting, but restarting is carried out when you perform maintenance. |
| Automatic minor version upgrade                       | Changes whether or not to perform a minor version upgrade of the DB engine automatically | Not necessary<br> Note Restarting is not necessary when you                                                                                 |

| Settings | Description | Restarting of Virtual Database Servers                              |
|----------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|          |             | change the setting, but restarting is carried out when you upgrade. |

## Starting/Terminating/Restarting a Virtual Database Server

You can start up, terminate, or restart a virtual database server. When you restart a virtual database server, the operation varies depending on whether the redundancy settings are "Enable" or "Disable."

- When the redundancy settings are "Enable"  
*Failover* takes place, then restarting is carried out.
- When the redundancy settings are "Disable"

Normal restarting is carried out. (The server stops for approximately 10 minutes.)

## Deleting a Virtual Database Server

Take one of the following actions and then delete the virtual database server:

- Create a snapshot before deletion



Tip

If you create a snapshot before you delete a database server, you can create a new database server by restoring the snapshot that contains the database server in the condition it was before it was deleted.

- Delete immediately

## Settings for Monitoring

You can monitor the resources on virtual database servers. You can monitor resources at the OS level, and monitor resources within the database engine.

You can set threshold values for each item, and set an action that will be taken (send e-mail) when the threshold value is exceeded.

Table 132: Settings for Monitoring

| Item             |         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Check interval   |         | 10 minutes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Display period   | Refresh | 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 9 hours, 12 hours, 1 day (by default), 3 days, 1 week                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                  | Custom  | Any part of last week, from one to seven days                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Items to monitor |         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CPU usage</li> <li>• Number of DB connections</li> <li>• Free disk space</li> <li>• Free memory space</li> <li>• Average number of disk I/O operations (number of times read and write are executed) per sec.</li> <li>• Number of requests in disk IO queue (read and write requests)</li> <li>• Delay time behind the read replica master</li> <li>• Binary log size</li> </ul> |

| Item | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Average value of number of bytes that are read from disk or written to disk per sec.</li> <li>• Average length of time that was spent per disk I/O (read and write) operation</li> <li>• Amount of swap space in use</li> </ul> |

## Monitoring of Logs

You can view PostgreSQL engine logs.



Log files are rotated every day. 72 hours of data is retained.

Note

## Creating a Read Replica

You can create a read replica in order to distribute the load for database references.



Important

A read replica differs from redundancy settings in that the data is duplicated asynchronously from the source database. Therefore, you may view old data as a result of an SQL reference.

## Managing Database Snapshots

You can create a snapshot of a virtual database server at a specific point in time, and create a new virtual database server by using the snapshot. Following functions related to snapshots are provided:

- Creation of a snapshot
- List display of a snapshot
- Information display of a snapshot
- Duplication of a snapshot
- Deletion of a snapshot

## Event Notification Settings

You can configure settings so that you receive notifications (via email) regarding events that take place on a virtual database server.

Table 133: List of Events

| Event Types          | Description                                                                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Availability         | Shutdown and restarting of databases                                                        |
| Backup               | Start and end of backups                                                                    |
| Configuration Change | Change of security groups, start and end of scaling of virtual database servers, and so on. |
| Creation             | Creation or deletion of instances and snapshots                                             |
| Failover             | Start and completion of failover                                                            |
| Low Storage          | Case where the allocated storage is full                                                    |
| Maintenance          | Change to an off-line state or recovery to an on-line state due to a patch application      |
| Recovery             | Restoration of virtual database servers                                                     |

| Event Types | Description                                                                                        |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Restoration | Restoration of virtual database servers by performing point-in-time recovery or by using snapshots |

## 5.3.2 Available Commands and SQL Statements

This section describes the SQL statements, which are client commands available with the Database as a Service.

### Client Commands

The list of commands available with this Database as a Service is shown below.



Tip

For details on each client command, refer to the PostgreSQL documentation, "PostgreSQL Client Applications."

Table 134: List of Available Client Commands

| Command Name | Purpose                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| clusterdb    | Clusters a database (physically reorders the tables, based on the index information)                                                                    |
| createdb     | Creates a new database<br> You cannot specify the -E option.<br>Note |
| createuser   | Defines a new user account                                                                                                                              |
| dropdb       | Removes a database                                                                                                                                      |
| dropuser     | Removes a user account                                                                                                                                  |
| ecpg         | Uses an embedded SQL C preprocessor                                                                                                                     |
| pg_config    | Provides information about the installed version                                                                                                        |
| pg_dump      | Extracts a database into a script file or other archive file                                                                                            |
| pg_dumpall   | Extracts a database cluster into a script file                                                                                                          |
| pg_restore   | Restores a database from an archive file created by pg_dump                                                                                             |
| psql         | Executes a command interactively                                                                                                                        |
| reindexdb    | Reindexes a database                                                                                                                                    |
| vacuumdb     | Garbage-collects and analyzes a database                                                                                                                |

### SQL Statements

The list of SQL statements available with this Database as a Service is shown below.



For details on each SQL statement syntax, refer to the PostgreSQL documentation, "SQL Commands."

Table 135: List of Available SQL Statements

| SQL Statement                   | Purpose                                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| ABORT                           | Aborts the current transaction                        |
| ALTER AGGREGATE                 | Changes the definition of an aggregate function       |
| ALTER COLLATION                 | Changes the definition of a collation                 |
| ALTER CONVERSION                | Changes the definition of a conversion                |
| ALTER DATABASE                  | Changes a database (Note 1)                           |
| ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES        | Defines default access privileges                     |
| ALTER DOMAIN                    | Changes the definition of a domain                    |
| ALTER EXTENSION                 | Changes the definition of an extension                |
| ALTER FUNCTION                  | Changes the definition of a function (Note 1)         |
| ALTER GROUP                     | Changes a role name or membership                     |
| ALTER INDEX                     | Changes the definition of an index                    |
| ALTER LARGE OBJECT              | Changes the definition of a large object              |
| ALTER OPERATOR                  | Changes the definition of an operator                 |
| ALTER OPERATOR CLASS            | Changes the definition of an operator class           |
| ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY           | Changes the definition of an operator family          |
| ALTER ROLE                      | Changes a database role (Note 1)                      |
| ALTER SCHEMA                    | Changes the definition of a schema                    |
| ALTER SEQUENCE                  | Changes the definition of a sequence generator        |
| ALTER TABLE                     | Changes the definition of a table                     |
| ALTER TABLESPACE                | Changes the definition of a tablespace                |
| ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION | Changes the definition of a text search configuration |
| ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY    | Changes the definition of a text search dictionary    |
| ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER        | Changes the definition of a text search parser        |
| ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE      | Changes the definition of a text search template      |
| ALTER TRIGGER                   | Changes the definition of a trigger                   |
| ALTER TYPE                      | Changes the definition of a type                      |
| ALTER USER                      | Changes a database role                               |
| ALTER VIEW                      | Changes the definition of a view                      |
| ANALYZE                         | Collects statistics about a database                  |

| SQL Statement                    | Purpose                                                              |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| BEGIN                            | Starts a transaction block                                           |
| CHECKPOINT                       | Forces a transaction log checkpoint                                  |
| CLOSE                            | Closes a cursor                                                      |
| CLUSTER                          | Clusters a table according to an index                               |
| COMMENT                          | Defines or changes the comment of an object                          |
| COMMIT                           | Commits the current transaction                                      |
| COMMIT PREPARED                  | Commits a transaction that was earlier prepared for two-phase commit |
| COPY                             | Copies data between a client and a database table (Note 2)           |
| CREATE AGGREGATE                 | Defines a new aggregate function (Note 4)                            |
| CREATE CAST                      | Defines a new cast (Note 4)                                          |
| CREATE COLLATION                 | Defines a new collation                                              |
| CREATE CONVERSION                | Defines a new encoding conversion (Note 4)                           |
| CREATE DATABASE                  | Creates a new database (Note 6)                                      |
| CREATE DOMAIN                    | Defines a new domain                                                 |
| CREATE EXTENSION                 | Installs an extension                                                |
| CREATE FUNCTION                  | Defines a new function (Note 1) (Note 3)                             |
| CREATE GROUP                     | Defines a new database role                                          |
| CREATE INDEX                     | Defines a new index                                                  |
| CREATE OPERATOR                  | Defines a new operator (Note 4)                                      |
| CREATE OPERATOR CLASS            | Defines a new operator class (Note 4)                                |
| CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY           | Defines a new operator family                                        |
| CREATE ROLE                      | Defines a new database role                                          |
| CREATE RULE                      | Defines a new rewrite rule                                           |
| CREATE SCHEMA                    | Defines a new schema                                                 |
| CREATE SEQUENCE                  | Defines a new sequence generator                                     |
| CREATE TABLE                     | Define a new table                                                   |
| CREATE TABLE AS                  | Defines a new table from the results of a query                      |
| CREATE TABLESPACE                | Defines a new tablespace (Note 5)                                    |
| CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION | Defines a new text search configuration                              |
| CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY    | Defines a new text search dictionary                                 |
| CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER        | Defines a new text search parser (Note 4)                            |
| CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE      | Defines a new text search template (Note 4)                          |
| CREATE TRIGGER                   | Defines a new trigger (Note 4)                                       |

| SQL Statement                  | Purpose                                                   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| CREATE TYPE                    | Defines a new data type (Note 4)                          |
| CREATE USER                    | Defines a new database role                               |
| CREATE VIEW                    | Defines a new view                                        |
| DEALLOCATE                     | Deallocates a prepared statement                          |
| DECLARE                        | Defines a cursor                                          |
| DELETE                         | Deletes rows of a table                                   |
| DISCARD                        | Discards session state                                    |
| DO                             | Executes an anonymous code block                          |
| DROP AGGREGATE                 | Removes a defined aggregate function                      |
| DROP CAST                      | Removes a defined cast                                    |
| DROP COLLATION                 | Removes a defined collation                               |
| DROP CONVERSION                | Removes a defined conversion                              |
| DROP DATABASE                  | Removes a defined database                                |
| DROP DOMAIN                    | Removes a defined domain                                  |
| DROP EXTENSION                 | Removes a defined extension                               |
| DROP FUNCTION                  | Removes a defined function                                |
| DROP GROUP                     | Removes a defined database role                           |
| DROP INDEX                     | Removes a defined index                                   |
| DROP OPERATOR                  | Removes a defined operator                                |
| DROP OPERATOR CLASS            | Removes a defined operator class                          |
| DROP OPERATOR FAMILY           | Removes a defined operator family                         |
| DROP OWNED                     | Removes database objects owned by a defined database role |
| DROP ROLE                      | Removes a defined database role                           |
| DROP RULE                      | Removes a defined rewrite rule                            |
| DROP SCHEMA                    | Removes a defined schema                                  |
| DROP SEQUENCE                  | Removes a defined sequence                                |
| DROP TABLE                     | Removes a defined table                                   |
| DROP TABLESPACE                | Removes a defined tablespace                              |
| DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION | Removes a defined text search configuration               |
| DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY    | Removes a defined text search dictionary                  |
| DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER        | Removes a defined text search parser                      |
| DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE      | Removes a defined text search template                    |
| DROP TRIGGER                   | Removes a defined trigger                                 |

| SQL Statement             | Purpose                                                                         |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DROP TYPE                 | Removes a defined data type                                                     |
| DROP USER                 | Removes a defined database role                                                 |
| DROP VIEW                 | Removes a defined view                                                          |
| END                       | Commits the current transaction                                                 |
| EXECUTE                   | Executes a prepared statement                                                   |
| EXPLAIN                   | Shows the execution plan of a query statement                                   |
| FETCH                     | Retrieves rows from a table using a cursor                                      |
| GRANT                     | Defines access privileges                                                       |
| INSERT                    | Creates new rows in a table                                                     |
| LISTEN                    | Listens for a notification                                                      |
| LOCK                      | Locks a table                                                                   |
| MOVE                      | Positions a cursor                                                              |
| NOTIFY                    | Generates a notification                                                        |
| PREPARE                   | Prepares a statement for execution                                              |
| PREPARE TRANSACTION       | Prepares the current transaction for two-phase commit                           |
| REASSIGN OWNED            | Changes the ownership of database objects owned by a database role              |
| REINDEX                   | Rebuilds indexes                                                                |
| RELEASE SAVEPOINT         | Destroys a previously defined savepoint                                         |
| RESET                     | Restores the value of a run-time parameter to the default value (Note 1)        |
| REVOKE                    | Removes access privileges                                                       |
| ROLLBACK                  | Aborts the current transaction                                                  |
| ROLLBACK PREPARED         | Cancels a transaction that was earlier prepared for two-phase commit            |
| ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT     | Rolls back to a savepoint                                                       |
| SAVEPOINT                 | Defines a new savepoint within the current transaction                          |
| SECURITY LABEL            | Defines or changes a security label applied to an object                        |
| SELECT                    | Retrieves rows from a table or view                                             |
| SELECT INTO               | Defines a new table from the results of a query                                 |
| SET                       | Changes a run-time parameter (Note 1)                                           |
| SET CONSTRAINTS           | Sets constraint check timing for the current transaction                        |
| SET ROLE                  | Sets the user identifier of the current session                                 |
| SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION | Sets the session user identifier and the user identifier of the current session |
| SET TRANSACTION           | Sets the characteristics of the current transaction                             |
| SHOW                      | Shows the value of a run-time parameter                                         |
| START TRANSACTION         | Starts a transaction block                                                      |

| SQL Statement | Purpose                                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| TRUNCATE      | Empties a table or set of tables                    |
| UNLISTEN      | Stops listening for a notification                  |
| UPDATE        | Updates rows of a table                             |
| VACUUM        | Garbage-collects and optionally analyzes a database |
| VALUES        | Computes a set of rows                              |

Note 1: When you specify `configuration_parameter`, you cannot specify a parameter that takes a directory path as a value.

Note 2: You cannot specify any file names for FROM and TO. Specify STDIN or STDOUT.

Note 3: You can only specify the languages SQL, internal, or plpgsql for LANGUAGE.

Note 4: If you specify a function, you can only specify a function that is implemented in SQL or the plpgsql language.

Note 5: The directory specified in the LOCATION clause is generated under `/userdata/tblspc` automatically. You do not have to prepare the directory in advance. In the LOCATION clause, you can specify a path within a length of 958 bytes.

Note 6: You cannot specify the ENCODING clause.



You cannot use the following SQL statements that are available in PostgreSQL 9.2:

- Note
- ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
  - ALTER FOREIGN TABLE
  - ALTER LANGUAGE
  - ALTER SERVER
  - ALTER USER MAPPING
  - CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
  - CREATE FOREIGN TABLE
  - CREATE LANGUAGE
  - CREATE SERVER
  - CREATE USER MAPPING
  - DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
  - DROP FOREIGN TABLE
  - DROP LANGUAGE
  - DROP SERVER
  - DROP USER MAPPING
  - LOAD

### 5.3.3 Database User

When you create a virtual database server, create the database management user and the system user as well.

#### Database Management User (Master User)

When you create the virtual database server, create the master user, who connects to the database and manages the database. The following privileges are granted to the master user:

- create role

- create db
- login

## System User



Warning

If you delete system users (rdbadmin, rdbrepladmin, rdb\_superuser), serious problems may occur with operations. Be careful not to delete them.

## 5.3.4 Failover

In a database environment where redundancy settings are enabled, if the system determines that the active virtual database server is down or unavailable, the system switches to the standby virtual database server. This operation is called failover.

A failover occurs when one of the following events is detected on the active DB server:

- Failure of a physical host
- Failure of an active virtual database server
- Changing of the virtual database server type
- Expansion of the database data area
- Restarting of a virtual database server by specifying "forced failover"



Note

After a failover occurs, it will take about one to five minutes to switch from the active server to the standby server.



Important

If a failover occurs, the connection to the database will be lost. Therefore, you must implement the process to reconnect to the database on the application side.

## 5.3.5 Database Recovery

You can perform recovery of virtual database servers from the following two types of data:

- Data that was acquired based on the automatic backup conditions that you specified when you created the virtual database server
- Snapshot data that was taken at a specific point in time

The difference between the types of data that is used for recovery is described as follows:

- Data that was acquired by automatic backup

Once a day, a backup of all data is created in the time period that you specified for backup when you created the virtual database server. After that, the transaction log is continuously backed up every five minutes.



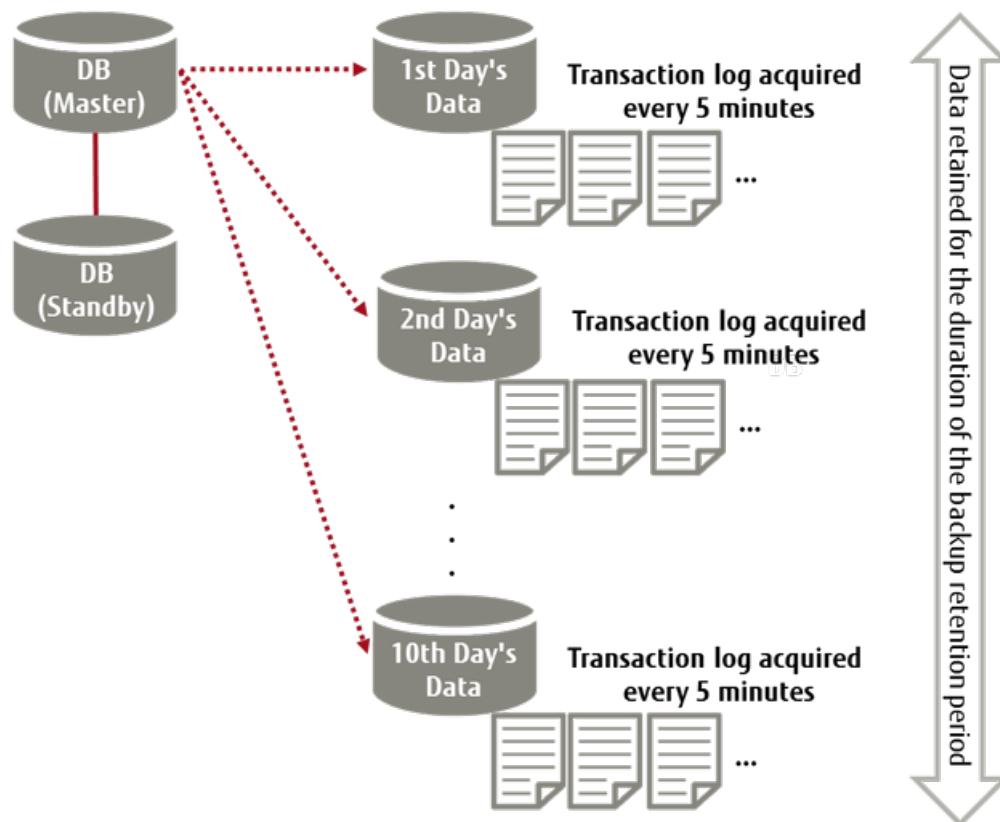
Tip

The data that is acquired by automatic backup is given a name that complies with the following naming conventions:

```
auto-snapshot-<DB instance ID>-<year>-<month>-<day>-<hour>-<minute>-<second>
```

The backup data is stored for the duration of the backup retention period that you specified when you created the virtual database server, and data whose retention period has ended is automatically deleted.

Figure 36: Automatic Backup



- Snapshot data that was taken at a specific point in time

The data that is created with the database snapshot function will be retained until the user deletes the snapshot data.

## Database Recovery Method

There are two methods of recovering databases, as shown below:

- Point-in-time recovery

Out of the data that has been backed up automatically, you can specify the date and time of the point to which you intend to recover the database. For the date and time, specify a point in time between the point when the backup was created and the point when the backup of the latest transaction log was created (at maximum five minutes prior).

- Recovery from snapshot data that you specify

Recover the database by specifying snapshot data that was acquired at a specific point in time.



Important

Create a new virtual database server from the snapshot data you use to recover the database. Confirm that there is no problem with the recovered data before you delete the old virtual database server.



Note

Since a new virtual database server will be created, you must prepare in advance a DB subnet group and other elements that are necessary for building a database.



Note

You can recover the database only in the same region where the data that will be used for recovery exists.

---

# Part 6: Email Delivery Service

---

## Topics:

- [\*Overview of Functions\*](#)
- [\*Authentication\*](#)
- [\*Mail Delivery\*](#)
- [\*Email Certificate\*](#)
- [\*Monitoring\*](#)

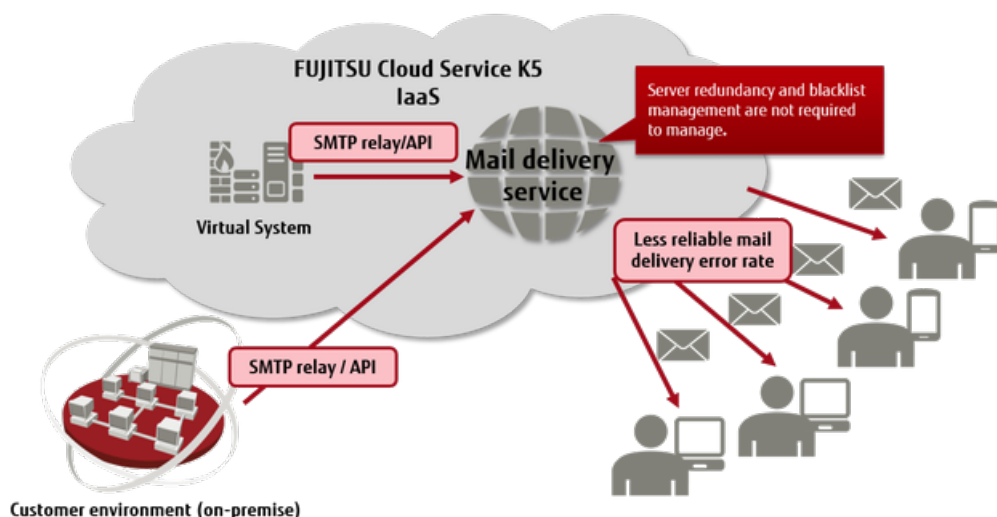
K5 IaaS provides an email delivery service.

## 6.1 Overview of Functions

### 6.1.1 Email Delivery Service

FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 IaaS provides a high-quality, efficient email delivery service. Tedious system operations such as building and managing an email server are handled by this service, allowing you to make significant reductions in operating cost.

Figure 37: Overall Layout of the Email Delivery Service



#### Functions Included

- Authentication Functions
  - Authentication of the address of the sender
  - Authentication of the domain
- Email delivery functions
  - Send by using an SMTP interface
  - Send by using an API
- Email certificate settings
  - SPF authentication settings
- Monitoring of results of sending
- Scheduling email

#### Limiting Values

Table 136: List of Limiting Values Related to the Email Delivery Service

| Item                                                    | Limiting Values                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum Number of Emails Sent per Second                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Using API: 50 (1 request/second x 50 recipients)</li><li>• Using SMTP interface: 500</li></ul> |
| Maximum Number of Registered Email Addresses per Domain | 1,000                                                                                                                                  |
| Maximum Number of Requests per Second                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 10 (different requests)</li></ul>                                                              |

| Item                             | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 (same request)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Number of Recipients per Request | 50                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Maximum Size per Email           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using API: 2 MB</li> <li>• Using SMTP interface: 10 MB</li> </ul> <div>  This includes email attachments.         </div> <div>Note</div> |

## 6.2 Authentication

---

### 6.2.1 Authentication Functions

---

There are two methods for authenticating the users of email services:

- Authentication by individual email addresses
- Bulk authentication by domain

You can specify only registered domains and email addresses as the From address (Envelope From and Header From).

Table 137: Settings for the Send Source

| Item                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| From Address                      | You can specify only an email address that has been registered, or an address with a domain that matches a registered domain name.                                                 |
| Settings for the Send Destination | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Local part: 64 bytes or less</li><li>• 255 bytes or less in total (including the local part)</li><li>• RFC-compliant (partially)</li></ul> |

## 6.3 Mail Delivery

### 6.3.1 Email Functions

An interface for sending email is provided. You can use SMTP or REST API to send email.

#### SMTP Interface

You can connect from your email server to the SMTP server for this service to send email.

Table 138: Connection Information

| Item                      | Settings                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Server                    | ess-smtp.cloud.nifty.com                                                                                                                   |
| Port                      | 587 (STARTTLS)<br>465 (TLS Wrapper)                                                                                                        |
| Authentication            | User authentication using SMTP-AUTH                                                                                                        |
| Destination Email Address | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Local part: 64 bytes or less</li><li>255 bytes or less in total (including the local part)</li></ul> |

#### REST API

You can use REST API to send email.

### 6.3.2 Scheduling an Email to Be Delivered

When you send an email, you can specify the time for the email to be delivered.

#### Specifying the Time to Deliver an Email

Specify the time to deliver the email, in the following format, in the subject line:

[yyyy/MM/dd HH:mm] Content of subject line



The time must be specified in the JST (Japan Standard Time) time zone.

Note



When the email is delivered, the part that specifies the time ([yyyy/MM/dd HH:mm]) is automatically deleted from the subject line.

Note

## 6.4 Email Certificate

### 6.4.1 Authentication Settings for Sender Policy Framework

If you use the email delivery service to deliver email, information is provided that allows you to use SPF authentication to certify that the sender is legitimate.

Register the following values on the DNS server that you use to manage the domains of source email addresses:

Table 139: Settings for SPF Records

| Setting Target | Settings                                    |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Record Type    | SPF                                         |
| Record Value   | v=spf1 include:ess-spf.cloud.nifty.com -all |



If the record already exists, add the following value: "include:ess-spf.cloud.nifty.com"

Note

## 6.5 Monitoring

### 6.5.1 Monitoring the Status of Delivery

You can check the delivery status of email that was sent during the previous two weeks.

The following information can be obtained in 15-minute intervals for the previous two weeks:

Table 140: Items That Can Be Monitored

| Item                        | Description                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Emails Sent                 | This is the total number of emails that have been sent.                                              |
| Bounces <sup>5</sup>        | This is the total number of emails that were not delivered and returned to the sender.               |
| Emails Refused <sup>6</sup> | This is the total number of emails that were refused by the incoming mail server at the destination. |



It is not possible to check the details of each email that was bounced.

Note

<sup>5</sup> An email is determined to have bounced when any of the following errors occur: Address unknown, email refused, mailbox full, congestion, domain name resolution failure, server connection timeout, SMTP command response timeout, delivery period expired, other transmission errors

<sup>6</sup> An email is refused when the incoming mail server at the destination returns an error code of 400 or 500.

---

# Part 7: Content Delivery Service

---

## Topics:

- [\*Overview of Functions\*](#)
- [\*Delivery Settings\*](#)
- [\*Reporting\*](#)

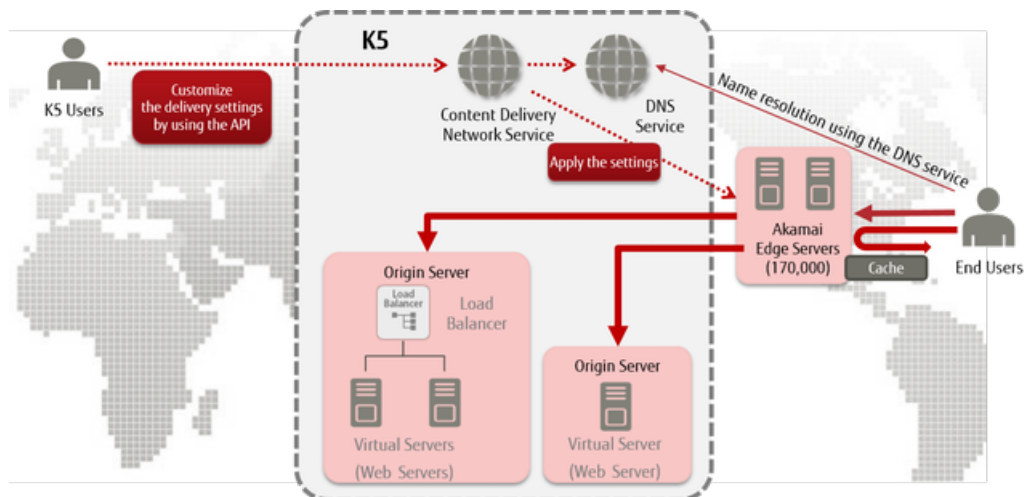
This service uses edge servers provided by AKAMAI to deliver content around the world.

## 7.1 Overview of Functions

### 7.1.1 Content Delivery Service

This service uses Akamai Intelligent Platform edge servers provided by Akamai Technologies Inc., located around the world, to cache and deliver the web content on your origin server. It makes content delivery faster and more efficient by directing end users who access your web content to the nearest edge server.

Figure 38: Overall Image of Content Delivery Service



#### Functions Included

- **Acquiring the Delivery Settings List**  
Acquire a list of delivery settings that can be set for your project.
- **Creating Delivery Settings**  
Create delivery settings to start content delivery.
- **Acquiring Delivery Settings**  
Specify the ID of the delivery settings you have created, to acquire the content for those delivery settings.
- **Editing Delivery Settings**  
Specify the ID of the delivery settings you have created, to edit the content for those delivery settings.
- **Deleting Delivery Settings**  
Specify the ID of the delivery settings you have created, to delete those delivery settings.
- **Deleting Cache**  
Specify a delivery settings ID that you have created to delete cached content from an edge server.
- **Creating a Report**  
Create statistical information from the total amount for each of the delivery settings that have been created within the range of your project.
- **Acquiring a Report**  
Acquire statistical information that was created with the Create Report function in json format.
- **Acquiring an Access Log**

Store edge server access logs in a container that you created in object storage.

## Content That Can Be Delivered

Table 141: List of Content That Can Be Delivered

| Content Type      | Details                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Deliverable? |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Website content   | Static content              | .jpg, .pdf, .html, .css and so on.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Yes          |
|                   | Dynamic content             | Content that is generated by software on a web server, but not personalized.<br>Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Top pages generated on a server</li><li>• Query strings for displaying weather forecasts ("?date=20141230")</li></ul> | Yes          |
|                   |                             | Content that is generated by software on a web server, and personalized.<br>Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Shopping carts</li><li>• Questionnaire responses that include personal information and such</li></ul>                     | No (*1)      |
| Streaming content | Progressive download method | Download method of content delivery used by YouTube and so on.                                                                                                                                                                                          | Yes          |
|                   | Live streaming method       | Real time method of content delivery used by ustream and so on.                                                                                                                                                                                         | No           |

\*1: For example, the content of a shopping cart should not be cached on an edge server. Therefore, create caching behavior control rules that follow the cache settings to control whether cache is allowed on the origin server. For details, refer to API Reference Manual.

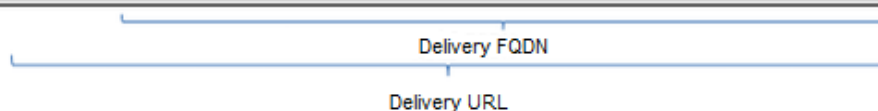
## Delivery URL

When you create delivery settings, a unique delivery URL is assigned for the website that the end user can access.

- If you do not have a unique domain (assigned domain)

A URL that includes an assigned domain provided by the content delivery service is used as the delivery URL. The configuration of the delivery URL for both http and https is shown below.

```
http:// [prefix]random characters.cdn-edge.cloud.global.fujitsu.com/  
https:// [prefix]random characters.cdn-edge-s.cloud.global.fujitsu.com/
```



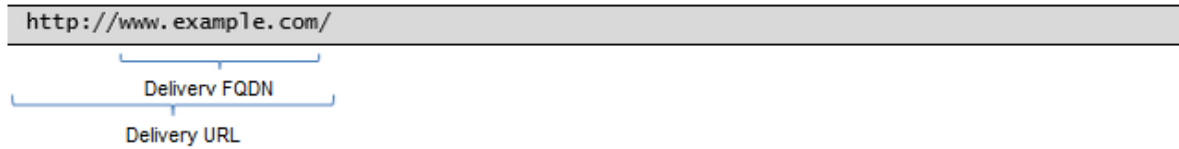
- If you have a unique domain

If you have a unique domain, use that domain to deliver content. In addition to creating the delivery settings for the content delivery service, you must also set CNAME for common-http.cdn-edge.cloud.global.fujitsu.com on a DNS server.

An example of a DNS resource record is shown below.

`www.example.com. IN CNAME common-http.cdn-edge.cloud.global.fujitsu.com.`

The configuration for the delivery URL and delivery FQDN is shown below.



## Secure Delivery

Use HTTPS to securely deliver content from an edge server to the end user. HTTPS delivery is available only for assigned domains that have been assigned by the content delivery service. Unique domains are not supported.



Note

The following protocols are supported by the edge servers: TLS1.0, TLS1.1, TLS1.2. SSLv2, SSLv3, and RC4 (refer to RFC7465) are not supported.

If you use a virtual server or a load balancer as your origin server, you must provide a certificate that links with the certificates shown in the table below.

Table 142: List of Server Certificates That Can Be Used with an Origin Server for Access via HTTPS

| Common Name                                   | Expiry Date       | SHA-1 Fingerprint                        |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| AddTrust External CA Root                     | May 30 2020       | 02faf3e291435468607857694df5e45b68851868 |
| AffirmTrust Commercial                        | December 31 2030  | f9b5b632455f9cbeec575f80dce96e2cc7b278b7 |
| AffirmTrust Networking                        | December 31 2030  | 293621028b20ed02f566c532d1d6ed909f45002f |
| AffirmTrust Networking                        | May 29 2029       | 5f3b8cf2f810b37d78b4ceec1919c37334b9c774 |
| AffirmTrust Premium                           | December 31 2040  | d8a6332ce0036fb185f6634f7d6a066526322827 |
| AffirmTrust Premium                           | September 30 2023 | 36b12b49f9819ed74c9ebc380fc6568f5dacb2f7 |
| America Online Root Certification Authority 2 | September 29 2037 | 85b5ff679b0c79961fc86e4422004613db179284 |
| Baltimore CyberTrust Root                     | May 13 2025       | d4de20d05e66fc53fe1a50882c78db2852cae474 |
| Certum CA                                     | June 11 2027      | 6252dc40f71143a22fde9ef7348e064251b18118 |
| Class 2 Primary CA                            | July 7 2019       | 74207441729cdd92ec7931d823108dc28192e2bb |
| COMODO Certification Authority                | January 1 2030    | 6631bf9ef74f9eb6c9d5a60cba6abed1f7bdef7b |

| Common Name                                   | Expiry Date       | SHA-1 Fingerprint                        |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Cybertrust Global Root                        | December 15 2021  | 5f43e5b1bff8788cac1cc7ca4a9ac6222bcc34c6 |
| DigiCert Assured ID Root CA                   | November 10 2031  | 0563b8630d62d75abbc8ab1e4bdfb5a899b24d43 |
| DigiCert Global Root CA                       | November 10 2031  | a8985d3a65e5e5c4b2d7d66d40c6dd2fb19c5436 |
| DigiCert High Assurance EV Root CA            | November 10 2031  | 5fb7ee0633e259dbad0c4c9ae6d38f1a61c7dc25 |
| DST Root CA X3                                | September 30 2021 | dac9024f54d8f6df94935fb1732638ca6ad77c13 |
| Entrust Root Certification Authority          | November 28 2026  | b31eb1b740e36c8402dad37d44df5d4674952f9  |
| Entrust.net Certification Authority (2048)    | July 24 2029      | 503006091d97d4f5ae39f7cbe7927d7d652d3431 |
| GeoTrust Global CA                            | May 21 2022       | de28f4a4ffe5b92fa3c503d1a349a7f9962a8212 |
| GeoTrust Primary Certification Authority      | July 17 2036      | 323c118e1bf7b8b65254e2e2100dd6029037f096 |
| GeoTrust Primary Certification Authority - G3 | December 2 2037   | 039eedb80be7a03c6953893b20d2d9323a4c2afd |
| Global Chambersign Root                       | October 1 2037    | 339b6b1450249b557a01877284d9e02fc3d2d8e9 |
| GlobalSign                                    | December 15 2021  | 75e0abb6138512271c04f85fddde38e4b7242efe |
| GlobalSign                                    | March 18 2029     | d69b561148f01c77c54578c10926df5b856976ad |
| GlobalSign Root CA                            | January 28 2028   | b1bc968bd4f49d622aa89a81f2150152a41d829c |
| Go Daddy Root Certificate Authority - G2      | January 1 2038    | 47beabc922eae80e78783462a79f45c254fde68b |
| Network Solutions Certificate Authority       | January 1 2030    | 74f8a3c3efe7b390064b83903c21646020e5dfce |
| QuoVadis Root CA 2                            | November 25 2031  | ca3afbcf1240364b44b216208880483919937cf7 |
| QuoVadis Root CA 2                            | June 30 2034      | 2796bae63f1801e277261ba0d77770028f20eee4 |
| QuoVadis Root CA 3                            | November 25 2031  | 1f4914f7d874951dddae02c0befd3a2d82755185 |
| QuoVadis Root Certification Authority         | March 18 2021     | de3f40bd5093d39b6c60f6dabc076201008976c9 |
| SecureTrust CA                                | January 1 2030    | 8782c6c304353bcfd29692d2593e7d44d934ff11 |
| StartCom Certification Authority              | September 18 2036 | 3e2bf7f2031b96f38ce6c4d8a85d3e2d58476a0f |

| Common Name                                                  | Expiry Date     | SHA-1 Fingerprint                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------|
| SwissSign Gold CA - G2                                       | October 25 2036 | d8c5388ab7301b1b6ed47ae645253a6f9f1a2761 |
| SwissSign Silver CA - G2                                     | October 25 2036 | 9baae59f56ee21cb435abe2593dfa7f040d11dcb |
| SwissSign Silver CA - G2                                     | June 6 2037     | feb8c432dcf9769aceae3dd8908ffd288665647d |
| TC TrustCenter Class 2 CA II                                 | January 1 2026  | ae5083ed7cf45cbc8f61c621fe685d794221156e |
| thawte Primary Root CA                                       | July 17 2036    | 91c6d6ee3e8ac86384e548c299295c756c817b81 |
| thawte Primary Root CA - G3                                  | December 2 2037 | f18b538d1be903b6a6f056435b171589caf36bf2 |
| UTN - DATACorp SGC                                           | June 25 2019    | 58119f0e128287ea50fdd987456f4f78dcfad6d4 |
| UTN-USERFirst-Hardware                                       | July 10 2019    | 0483ed3399ac3608058722edbc5e4600e3bef9d7 |
| VeriSign Class 3 Public Primary Certification Authority - G3 | July 17 2036    | 132d0d45534b6997cdb2d5c339e25576609b5cc6 |
| VeriSign Class 3 Public Primary Certification Authority - G5 | July 17 2036    | 4eb6d578499b1ccf5f581ead56be3d9b6744a5e5 |
| VeriSign Class 4 Public Primary Certification Authority - G3 | July 17 2036    | c8ec8c879269cb4bab39e98d7e5767f31495739d |
| VeriSign Universal Root Certification Authority              | December 2 2037 | 3679ca35668772304d30a5fb873b0fa77bb70d54 |



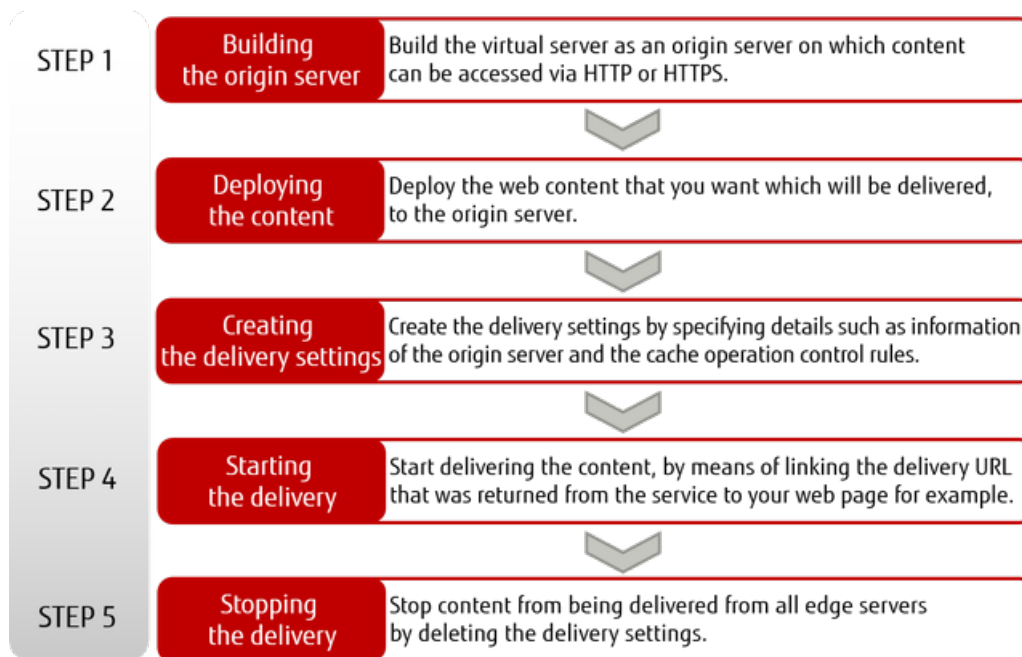
Note

- Self-signed certificates created by the user are not supported.
- An unlimited license is not required. Provide a certificate only for the origin server.

## How to Use This Service

---

Figure 39: How to Start the Content Delivery Service



### Points to Note

---

- You can use only port 80 for access via HTTP, and only port 443 for access via HTTPS.
- Charges for content delivery service are due 2 months after the end of the billing period.
- DNS-related operations for the content delivery service cannot be performed during regularly scheduled maintenance for the DNS service (from midnight to 1am on the 1st of each month).
- You will be notified of the time and details of any maintenance to be performed by Akamai.



Content delivery will continue during maintenance.

Tip

## 7.2 Delivery Settings

### 7.2.1 Delivery Settings Function

This function allows you to manage delivery settings, in order to control the delivery of content from an edge server. There is also a function for saving edge server access logs in object storage.

#### Acquiring the Delivery Settings List

This function acquires a list of the delivery settings you have created, delivery URLs, and access log status.



Even if a delivery status is "undeployed," it will appear in the list.

Tip

#### Creating Delivery Settings

Content delivery starts when you create delivery settings. Specify the following information to create delivery settings.

Table 143: Creating Delivery Settings (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Required |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| FQDN Information               | <p>Specify either of the following formats for the FQDN information that will be delivered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>When using a unique domain: FQDN</li></ul>  <p>You must set CNAME on the DNS server.</p> <p>Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>When not using a unique domain: Prefix</li></ul> |          |
| Delivery Protocol Scheme       | <p>Specify either of the following:</p>  <p>If this setting is omitted, "http" will be specified.</p> <p>Tip</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>For delivery by HTTP: http</li><li>For delivery by HTTPS: https</li></ul> <p>If you access an edge server by HTTP, the connection is redirected to HTTPS.</p>              |          |
| Initial Status                 | <p>Specify the initial status for the delivery settings.</p>  <p>If this setting is omitted, "activate" will be specified.</p> <p>Tip</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To enable content delivery immediately: activate</li><li>To disable content delivery: deactivate</li></ul>                                        |          |
| Access Log Storage Destination | <p>Specify a container in object storage to use as the storage destination for access logs.</p>  <p>If this is left blank, no access log is acquired.</p> <p>Tip</p>                                                                                                                                                              |          |

| Item                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                          | Required |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
|                                |  <p>Note You can store access logs only in a container on object storage in Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1).</p> |          |
| Access Log Prefix              | Specify the prefix to assign to the object name of the access log.                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Caching Behavior Control Rules | Specify delivery operations in json format, such as specifying the origin server to use for delivery or specifying a cache TTL with a condition such as an extension or path.                        | Yes      |

Caching behavior control rules are used to implement an action specified as a "behavior" (for example, specification of TTL) when the conditions specified in "match" (for example, the condition that the extension is .jpg) are met.

 **Tip** Refer to [Example Usage Scenarios and Caching Behavior Control Rules](#) on page 177 for examples of "matches" and "behaviors." For description formats, refer to API Reference Manual.

The items that can be set to "matches" and "behaviors" are shown below.

**Table 144: Match (List of Items That Can Be Set)**

| Item   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| URL    | Set a character string that identifies the URL to be accessed by the end user.<br>Examples: jpg, index.html, /img/*, /*                                                                                               |
| Method | Set the HTTP methods to be accessed by the end user. (Example: "GET, POST") <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GET</li> <li>• POST</li> <li>• PUT</li> <li>• DELETE</li> <li>• HEAD</li> <li>• PATCH</li> </ul> |
| Scheme | Set the scheme to be accessed by the end user. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HTTP</li> <li>• HTTPS</li> </ul>                                                                                              |
| Header | Set whether there is a header to be accessed by the end user.<br>Example: "User-Agent: xxx yyy zzz"                                                                                                                   |

**Table 145: Behavior (List of Items That Can Be Set)**

| Item            | Description                                                      |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Origin Settings | Specify FQDN and accompanying information for the origin server. |

| Item                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                  | As accompanying information, specify information for the origin server to determine if access is via the content delivery service.<br>Examples of accompanying information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Host header</li> <li>• Cache key that affects cache conditions</li> </ul> |
| Cache TTL Settings               | Specify cache TTL as a fixed value, dependent on the origin, etc.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Query Strings Used by Cache Keys | For dynamic pages that can be cached, specify behaviors that identify cache keys.<br>Example: Exclude a query string that includes a session ID                                                                                                                                                |
| Disable Cache                    | Disable the cache on an edge server at a specified time (including "immediately").                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| IP Address Restriction           | Restrict end users who are allowed to access based on their IP addresses.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Region Restriction               | Restrict end users who are allowed to access based on the region where they originally accessed.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Referer Restriction              | Restrict end users who are allowed to access based on the referer information .                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Failover                         | If the originally specified origin server goes down, acquire content from a different origin server.                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## Acquiring Delivery Settings

You can specify the ID of the delivery setting to acquire the following content for the delivery setting:

- Caching behavior control rules
- Delivery URL
- Delivery protocol
- Delivery status
- Access log storage destination
- Access log status

## Editing Delivery Settings

You can specify the ID of the delivery setting to edit the following content for the delivery setting:

- Caching behavior control rules
- Delivery status
- Start/stop storing access logs, access log storage destination



Note

- For caching behavior control rules, specify the content in its entirety rather than specifying the content partially.
- You cannot make changes to delivery FQDN.

## Deleting Delivery Settings

You can delete delivery settings that have been created, and stop content delivery. When the settings are deleted, the delivery URL is disabled and can no longer be accessed by end users. Storing access logs is also stopped.



Note

- Some time is required for the command to delete delivery settings to reach all edge servers.
- If delivery is performed on a unique domain, you should disable the CNAME setting.

## Deleting Cache

Delete the cache for content that matches a specific delivery URL from an edge server when replacing the files on an origin server or when incorrect files have been delivered.



Note

- Some time is required for the command to delete cache to reach all edge servers.
- If you delete the cache, content will be fetched from the origin server the next time there is access by an end user.

## Access Log Function

Store access logs in the container for object storage that was specified when creating delivery settings or with the edit function for delivery settings. Storing access logs continue until the information for the storage destination is changed which stops access logs from being stored, or until the delivery settings are deleted.



Note

- The time lag to start or stop storing access logs is normally about 6 hours after accessing the edge server. Some examples are shown below.
- If delivery settings that enable access logs are created at 6am and the edge server is accessed immediately, that access log can be acquired at around 12pm.
  - When you stop storing access logs, the effects take place immediately. If storing access logs is stopped around 12:30pm, access logs after around 7am cannot be acquired.

Specify the following information for the storage destination for access logs.

- Name of container for object storage

Example: "container"



Note

You can store access logs only in a container on object storage in Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1).

- Pseudo path for the object (optional), and prefix that includes the first letters of the file name
- Example: "path/PreFix01\_"

The access logs are stored for every delivery FQDN, at least every hour, and normally at least every 12 MB with the object name shown below. If the delivery setting is http, "-h" is added to the end. If the setting is https, "-s" is added.

```
[Prefix] [Date] [ApproximateStartTime] - [StartTime+1Hour] - [Number] - [h or s].log
```



Tip

Access logs are stored even if the edge server is not accessed.

Access logs are in CSV format, and include the following information.



The date/time order is not guaranteed.

Table 146: List of Items Output to Access Logs

| Item            | Description                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| date            | Date (UTC)                                                                                                                                       |
| time            | Time (UTC)                                                                                                                                       |
| cs-ip           | IP address of client                                                                                                                             |
| cs-method       | HTTP methods such as GET, POST                                                                                                                   |
| cs-uri          | Origin URI for accessed file<br>(If the origin settings for the caching behavior control rule that you have set are not matched, "-" is output.) |
| sc-status       | Status Code response                                                                                                                             |
| sc-bytes        | Transferred size (Units: Bytes)                                                                                                                  |
| time-taken      | Time required from reception of request by the edge server until a response is sent (Units: ms)                                                  |
| cs (Referer)    | Referer information (If there is no information, "-" is output.)                                                                                 |
| cs (User-Agent) | User-Agent information                                                                                                                           |
| cs (Cookie)     | Cookie information (If there is no information, "-" is output.)                                                                                  |

Example of access log output:

```
date,time,cs-ip,cs-method,cs-uri,sc-status,sc-bytes,time-
taken,cs (Referer),cs (User-Agent),cs (Cookie)
2015/11/6,2:10:42,8.8.8.8,GET,/test01-fe102d0e775f4918abe81c17198bd62f.cdn-
edge.cloud.global.fujitsu.com/images/privatenetwork-
img-06.jpg,200,62038,82,-,Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 6.1; WOW64)
AppleWebKit/537.36 (KHTML, like Gecko) Chrome/46.0.2490.80
Safari/537.36,_ga=GA1.3.547601374.14474166xx; _gat_UA-290256xx-1=1;
_ga=GA1.2.547601374.144741663
```

## 7.2.2 Example Usage Scenarios and Caching Behavior Control Rules

This section presents examples of common usage scenarios, operation procedures, and caching behavior control rules when using the content delivery service.

- [Website Content Delivery](#) on page 177
- [Content Delivery with a Unique Domain](#) on page 178
- [Secure Content Delivery](#) on page 179
- [Replacing Content](#) on page 180
- [Reconsidering the Content Update Frequency](#) on page 180
- [Conditional Access Restrictions](#) on page 181
- [Stopping Content Delivery](#) on page 182

### Website Content Delivery

- Example building procedure
  1. Create a virtual server, and build the web server that will be the origin server.

2. Also build a load balancer (example: <http://lb-001.loadbalancing-jp-east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com>), database and so on as required.
3. Upload the content to the origin server.
4. Use a browser to confirm that you can access the origin server.
5. Use the content delivery service API to create the delivery settings.

At this time, specify the URL for the load balancer in the caching behavior control rules that you specify in the API parameters. Temporarily specify 3 days (3d) for cache TTL.

6. When you run the API, you will acquire the delivery URL. (Example: <http://xxx-123abc.cdn-edge.cloud.global.fujitsu.com>)
  7. Enter the delivery URL in a browser and confirm that you can access the delivery URL.
- Example of caching behavior control rules

```
{
  "rules": [
    {
      "matches": [
        {
          "name": "url-wildcard",
          "value": "/*"
        }
      ],
      "behaviors": [
        {
          "name": "origin",
          "value": "-",
          "params": {
            "digitalProperty": "-",
            "originDomain": "lb-001.loadbalancing-jp-east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com",
            "cacheKeyType": "origin",
            "cacheKeyValue": "-",
            "hostHeaderType": "origin",
            "hostHeaderValue": "-"
          }
        },
        {
          "name": "caching",
          "type": "honor",
          "value": "3d"
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

## Content Delivery with a Unique Domain

- Example building procedure



Tip

If you are using the DNS service for the name resolution of a unique domain, you should prepare a name and so on for the CNAME setting with a domain name that you own in advance. For details, refer to the K5 DNS service.

1. Create delivery settings using the procedures described in [Website Content Delivery](#) on page 177, to acquire the delivery URL.

At this time, specify a unique domain (example: [www.example.com](http://www.example.com)) for delivery FQDN in the API parameters.

2. Enter the delivery URL in a browser and confirm that you can access the delivery URL.
3. Use the DNS service to create a CNAME record.

At this time, create the CNAME settings so that the unique domain points to [common-http.cdn-edge.cloud.global.fujitsu.com](http://common-http.cdn-edge.cloud.global.fujitsu.com).

4. Use a browser to confirm that you can access the unique domain.
- Example of caching behavior control rules

```
{
  "rules": [
    {
      "matches": [
        {
          "name": "url-wildcard",
          "value": "/*"
        }
      ],
      "behaviors": [
        {
          "name": "origin",
          "value": "-",
          "params": {
            "digitalProperty": "www.example.com",
            "originDomain": "lb-001.loadbalancing-jp-east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com",
            "cacheKeyType": "origin",
            "cacheKeyValue": "-",
            "hostHeaderType": "origin",
            "hostHeaderValue": "-"
          }
        },
        {
          "name": "caching",
          "type": "honor",
          "value": "3d"
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

## Secure Content Delivery

- Example building procedure
  1. If the origin server is a virtual server machine or load balancer that you have created, prepare an SSL certificate. For details about what certifications you can use, refer to [Secure Delivery](#).

---



If the origin server can accept only connections via HTTPS, open only port 443.

Tip

---

  2. Create delivery settings using the procedures described in [Website Content Delivery](#) on page 177.

At this time, specify https for the delivery protocol in the API parameters. In addition, for the edge server to accept connections via HTTPS only, specify HTTPS in the caching behavior control rules.

  3. When you run the API, you will acquire the delivery URL for HTTPS.
  4. Enter the delivery URL in a browser and confirm that you can access the delivery URL.
- Example of caching behavior control rules

```
{
  "rules": [
    {
      "matches": [
        {
          "name": "url-wildcard",
          "value": "/*"
        }
      ],
      {
```

```

        "name": "url-scheme",
        "value": "HTTPS"
    },
    ],
    "behaviors": [
        {
            "name": "origin",
            "value": "-",
            "params": {
                "digitalProperty": "-",
                "originDomain": "lb-001.loadbalancing-jp-
east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com",
                "cacheKeyType": "origin",
                "cacheKeyValue": "-",
                "hostHeaderType": "origin",
                "hostHeaderValue": "-"
            }
        },
        {
            "name" : "caching",
            "type" : "honor"
            "value" : "3d"
        }
    ]
}

```

## Replacing Content

---

In this section, it is assumed that you have created delivery settings using the procedures described in [Website Content Delivery](#) on page 177.

- Example operation procedure
  1. Replace image files, PDF files and so on stored in the origin server.
  2. Perform "Delete Cache" for the specified object on the edge server.
  3. Wait a few minutes, and then access the delivery URL from a browser to confirm that the replaced object is displayed.

## Reconsidering the Content Update Frequency

---

In this section, it is assumed that you have created delivery settings using the procedures described in [Website Content Delivery](#) on page 177.

- Example operation procedure
  1. Change the TTL setting for the specified object (URL and so on) to 1 hour. (If the cache TTL has an image such as a "good weather," do not make this change.)
  2. Thereafter, cache will be maintained on the edge server for 1 hour.
- Example of caching behavior control rules

```

{
  "rules": [
    {
      "matches": [
        {
          "name": "url-wildcard",
          "value": "/*"
        }
      ],
      "behaviors": [
        {
          "name": "origin",
          "value": "-",
          "params": {
            "digitalProperty": "-",

```

```

        "originDomain": "lb-001.loadbalancing-jp-
east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com",
        "cacheKeyType": "origin",
        "cacheKeyValue": "-",
        "hostHeaderType": "origin",
        "hostHeaderValue": "-"
    }
},
{
    "name" : "caching",
    "type" : "fixed"
    "value" : "3d"
}
],
"matches": [
    {
        "name": "url-extension",
        "value": ".jsp"
    }
],
"behaviors": [
    {
        "name" : "caching",
        "type" : "fixed"
        "value" : "1h"
    }
]
}
]
}

```

## Conditional Access Restrictions

---

In this section, it is assumed that you have created delivery settings using the procedures described in [Website Content Delivery](#) on page 177.

- Example operation procedure
  1. Edit the caching behavior control rules, and use the "Edit Delivery Settings" function to change the access region for the specified path (and lower directories) to Japan only.
  2. Thereafter, access is prevented from all regions other than Japan.
- Example of caching behavior control rules

```

{
    "rules": [
        {
            "matches": [
                {
                    "name": "url-wildcard",
                    "value": "/*"
                }
            ],
            "behaviors": [
                {
                    "name": "origin",
                    "value": "-",
                    "params": {
                        "digitalProperty": "-",
                        "originDomain": "lb-001.loadbalancing-jp-
east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com",
                        "cacheKeyType": "origin",
                        "cacheKeyValue": "-",
                        "hostHeaderType": "origin",
                        "hostHeaderValue": "-"
                    }
                },
                {
                    "name" : "caching",

```

```

        "type" : "honor"
        "value" : "3d"
    }
],
"matches": [
    {
        "name": "url-wildcard",
        "value": "/domestic/*"
    }
],
"behaviors": [
    {
        "name": "geo-whitelist",
        "type": "country",
        "value": "JP"
    }
]
}
]
}

```

## Stopping Content Delivery

---

- Example operation procedure
  1. If you are using a unique domain, return the CNAME destination from the delivery URL to a URL such as an on-premises URL.
  2. Use the "Delete Delivery Settings" function to delete the delivery settings.

## 7.3 Reporting

### 7.3.1 Report Functions

Create and acquire reports that include statistical information such as the return status for status codes from an edge server to the end user, and the volume of data transferred. Such reports can be useful for looking up cache hit rates in order to reconsider cache TTL, for example.

#### Create Report Function

Create statistical information from the total amount for each of the delivery settings that have been created within the range of a project. To create a report, specify the following items.

Table 147: Creating a Report (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Required |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Granularity                    | Specify the granularity of the information from either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• daily: A report is created every day.</li><li>• hourly: A report is created every hour (from hh:00 to hh:59).</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Yes      |
| Starting Date                  | Specify the starting date (UTC). You can specify a maximum period of up to 60 days in the past.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Yes      |
| Ending Date                    | Specify the ending date (UTC). If omitted, the current date is set.<br><br>Note <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You cannot specify a date before the starting date.</li><li>• If granularity is set to "daily," you must set a date within 31 days from the starting date.</li><li>• If granularity is set to "hourly," you must set a date within 14 days from the starting date.</li></ul> |          |
| Protocol                       | Specify a protocol scheme for which data is gathered, from one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• http: HTTP accesses only</li><li>• ssl: HTTPS accesses only</li><li>• all: Combined total (default)</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| List of Metrics to Be Acquired | Specify the names of the metrics that you want to output from <a href="#">Table 148: List of Metrics That Can Be Acquired with a Report</a> on page 183, separated by commas.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Yes      |

Table 148: List of Metrics That Can Be Acquired with a Report

| Name                    | Description                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| IncompleteDownloadCount | Number of incomplete downloads      |
| 200Count                | Number of Status Code 200 responses |

| Name                | Description                                                                  |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 206Count            | Number of Status Code 206 responses                                          |
| 2XXCount            | Combined total number of Status Code 2XX responses and incomplete downloads  |
| 302Count            | Number of Status Code 302 responses                                          |
| 304Count            | Number of Status Code 304 responses                                          |
| 3XXCount            | Combined total number of Status Code 3XX responses                           |
| 404Count            | Number of Status Code 404 responses                                          |
| 4XXCount            | Combined total number of Status Code 4XX responses                           |
| 5XXCount            | Combined total number of Status Code 5XX responses                           |
| RequestCount        | Combined total number of requests from the end user to the edge server       |
| TotalBytes          | Volume of data transferred from the edge server to the end user [MB]         |
| IngressBytes        | Volume of data transferred from the origin server to the edge server [B]     |
| IngressCount        | Number of requests from the edge server to the origin server                 |
| IngressRequestBytes | Volume of data transferred from the edge server to the origin server [B]     |
| OffloadHitRatio     | Ratio of offload from the edge server to the origin server. Cache hit ratio. |

A few minutes are required to create a report. Therefore, when the command to create a report is issued, the report ID can be acquired first. You can specify a report ID and then use the "Acquire Report" function to view a report that has been created.



A report ID is valid for 1 hour after the report is created. Then, it is automatically deleted.

Note

Reports are created based on the latest information aggregated on the edge server. Normally, the acquisition of this information starts in about 4 hours. Normally it takes about 1 or 2 days to aggregate the information on all edge servers.



Tip

For example, if on January 1 at 12pm a command is implemented to create a report until 11am, it is possible that the report that is acquired in a few minutes will be based on provisional information that was aggregated from the starting time of the content delivery until about 8am on January 1. To acquire reports from all edge servers, issue a command to create a report again at around 12pm two days later on January 3.

## Acquire Report Function

Specify a report ID that was created with the Create Report function to acquire a report in json format. The json data in the report will have the following format.

```
{
  "headers": [
    {Definition of headers (index: 0 is fixed to "Time"(UTC))}
    {Definition of headers (index: 1 and later are according to the list
of metrics you have specified)}
    ...
  ],
  "rows": [
```

```

        [Data in 1st row based on headers],
        ...
        [Data in nth row based on headers],
    ],
    "metadata": {
        "granularity": "daily" (or other conditions as you have specified),
        ...
    }
}

```

Example of json data in report:

```

{
  "headers": [
    {"index": 0, "name": "Time",},
    {"index": 1, "name": "200Count"},
    {"index": 2, "name": "TotalBytes"}
  ],
  "rows": [
    ["2015/12/01 00:00", "47", "100.0"],
    ["2015/12/02 00:00", "30", "67.4"]
  ],
  "metadata": {
    "time_created": "2015/12/10 00:11",
    "granularity": "daily",
    "start_date": "20151201",
    "end_date": "20151202",
    "delivery_option": "all",
    "metrics": ["200Count", "TotalBytes"],
  }
}

```

---

# Part 8: Template

---

Topics:

- *Orchestration*

K5 IaaS provides this function to create a template of the K5 resources built by the user.

## 8.1 Orchestration

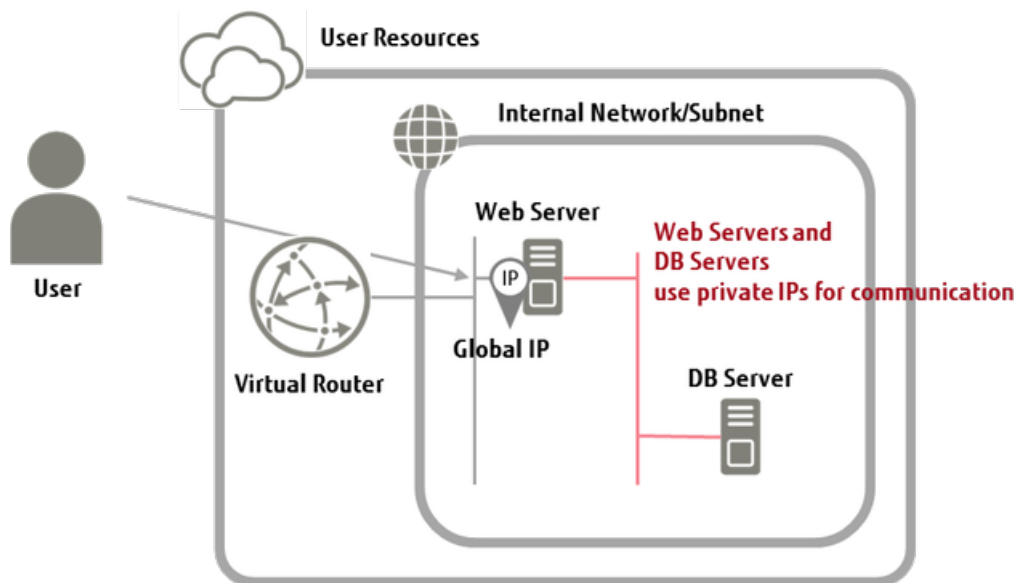
### 8.1.1 Orchestration Function

This function configures an environment automatically by using multiple virtual resources provided by the system.

As a basic example, this section explains the configuration of a Web system that uses a back-end DB server.

The orchestration function handles system groups like the one described below as one "stack."

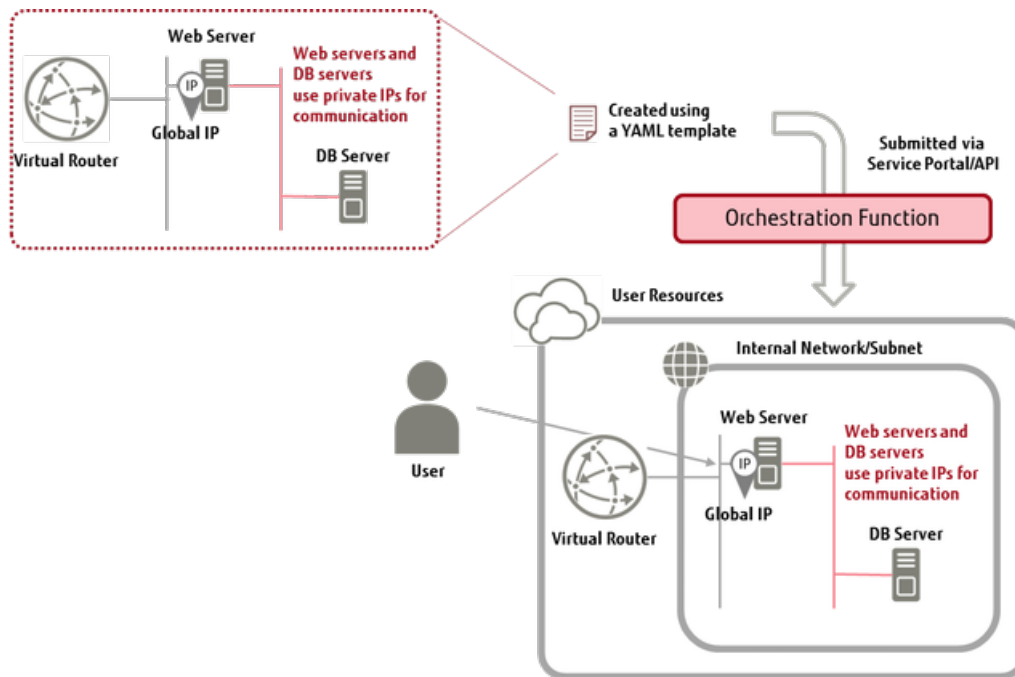
Figure 40: Example of an Automatically Configured System



The text that defines a stack is referred to as a "template."

If you submit a template file to the orchestration function via Service Portal or an API, the environment will be configured automatically.

Figure 41: Diagram of Use of the Orchestration Function



## 8.1.2 Building a Stack

Create the entire collection of resources defined in the template (YAML format) all at once. Manage the created set of resources as a stack.



Note

To build a stack, the "System Owner role (cpf\_systemowner)" of the project where you want to build the stack must be assigned in advance to the user of this function.

In addition to the parameter settings for the resources to be created, you can include the following information in the template file.

- A structure that includes resource dependency  
Example: Create block storage first, attach it to a virtual server, and then start the virtual server.
- A structure that uses multiple templates by calling one template from another



Note

If the user applies a template that includes the parameters section, the user needs to configure the values when building the stack.

To build a stack, specify the following items:

Table 149: List of Items That Can Be Set for a Stack

| Item       | Description                                                                                                  | Required |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Stack Name | Specify a name to identify the stack to be created.<br><br>The name must begin with an alphabetic character. | Yes      |
| Project ID | Specify the ID of the project where you want to build the stack.                                             | Yes      |

| Item              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Required |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Template URL      | Specify the URL where the template can be acquired.<br> Specify either "Template URL" or "Template."<br>Note                                                                                                                                                                         |          |
| Template          | Specify a template character string.<br> Specify either "Template URL" or "Template."<br>Note<br> If you specify both "Template URL" and "Template," this item will be given priority.<br>Important |          |
| environment       | This item changes the resource type defined in the template to a different resource type. Use the JSON format to specify this item.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| files             | Specify in the JSON format the mapping between file names and the content of the files.<br> Add this information when using the get_file section in the template.<br>Note                                                                                                            |          |
| param_name-n      | Specify in the "n" part the name of the input parameter to be passed to the template.<br> Add this information when using the get_param section in the template.<br>Note                                                                                                           |          |
| param_value-n     | Specify in the "n" part the value of the input parameter to be passed to the template.<br> Add this information when using the get_param section in the template.<br>Note                                                                                                          |          |
| Creation Timeout  | Specify the time, in minutes, to wait for the stack building process before timeout occurs. The default setting is 60 minutes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |          |
| Rollback Settings | Configure these settings so that rollback is not carried out when the stack building process fails. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"true" (default): the created resources are not deleted</li> <li>"false": the created resources included in the stack are deleted</li> </ul>                                                                               |          |

## Creating a Template

Refer to [Example of Setting Auto-Scaling](#) on page 35.

## Limiting Values

Table 150: List of Limiting Values Related to Orchestration

| Item                                 | Limiting Values   |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Number of Stacks that Can Be Created | 1,000 per project |

| Item                                                                | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Stack Name                                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), hyphens (-), and periods (.)</li> </ul> |
| Number of Resources that Can Be Included in a Stack                 | 1,000 per stack                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Number of Events that Can Be Created                                | 1,000 per stack<br> If this limiting value is exceeded, the oldest events are deleted.<br>Note        |
| Size of Template File that Can Be Specified when a Stack Is Created | 512 KB or less                                                                                                                                                                         |

## 8.1.3 Modifying/Deleting a Stack

Modify or delete a created stack.



Note

To modify or delete a stack, the "System Owner role (cpf\_systemowner)" of the project where the stack to be modified/deleted exists, must be assigned in advance to the user of this function.

### Modifying a Stack

To modify the content of a stack, apply a new template file to the existing stack.



Note

If the user applies a template file that includes the parameters section, the user needs to configure the values when changing the stack, as is the case with the creation of a new stack.

### Deleting a Stack

Delete an existing stack.

---

# Part 9: Monitoring Service

---

## Topics:

- [\*Overview of Functions\*](#)
- [\*Monitoring of Resources\*](#)
- [\*Alarms\*](#)

K5 IaaS provides a monitoring function for the K5 resources built by the user and for the applications executed by the user on the K5 resources.

## 9.1 Overview of Functions

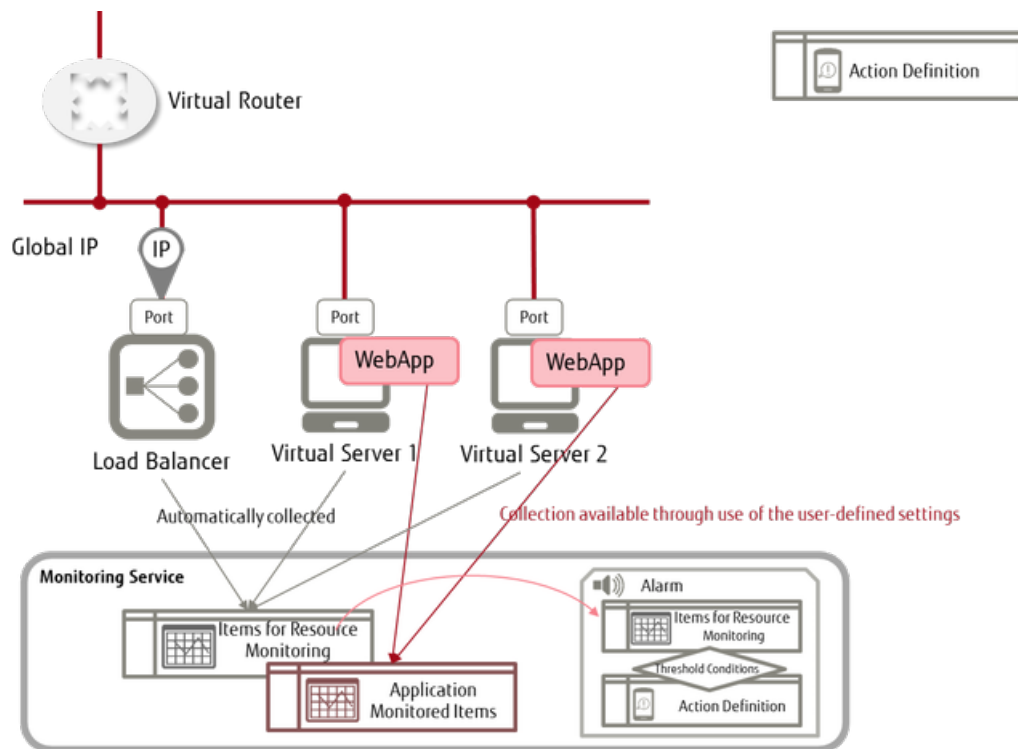
### 9.1.1 Monitoring Service

This service provides a function to monitor the applications that users run on the system.

- This function collects and tracks information on the monitored items of resources as well as applications run by the user. Rapid solutions based on the results of monitoring allow smooth operation of your application and business.
- This function monitors resources such as virtual servers and DBaaS virtual database servers. You can also create and monitor unique items for your applications and services.
- You can acquire monitoring data by using an API, or send notifications to programs via alarms. You can then perform troubleshooting based on the status of the cloud environment, visualize the trends, and run automated actions.

#### Overall Layout of the Monitoring Service

Figure 42: Overview of the Monitoring Service



#### List of Functions Included

| Function                | Overview                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Monitoring of resources | This function automatically monitors resources. There is no need to install additional software.                                                                       |
| Unique item monitoring  | Unique items that are created by the user's application are sent and monitored by the monitoring service.                                                              |
| Settings for alarms     | Set alarms for monitored items. When the specified threshold is exceeded for a monitored item, automated actions such as sending email and auto-scaling are performed. |

| Function  | Overview                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Dashboard | The dashboard displays graphs and statistics for all monitored items from the management console. You can also view all alarms and their history. |
| API       | All operations and the acquisition of monitored items are performed by using an API (compatible with Ceilometer from OpenStack).                  |

## 9.2 Monitoring of Resources

### 9.2.1 Monitoring Resources

The resources running on the system are monitored automatically. Monitoring data is acquired for the monitored items that are defined for each resource.



Monitoring is available only within the same region.

Note

#### Acquiring Monitoring Data

You can view the monitoring data in a graph as statistical values on Service Portal, or you can acquire the data by using an API. You can specify the following parameters when acquiring this data:



Tip For information about the items to be monitored, refer to [Lists of Monitored Items](#) on page 238.

- Information that identifies the item to be monitored
  - Meter name, resource ID, resource metadata
- Statistic type
  - Average, minimum, maximum, total, number of samples
- Period for statistics calculation
  - 1 minute (minimum) to 2 weeks (maximum)
- Acquisition period
  - Desired period within the previous two weeks



Important

Monitoring data is saved for two weeks. To save data that is older than two weeks, you must acquire the data by using an API before it is deleted and then save it in another location.

### 9.2.2 Monitoring with a Custom Meter

Users can create custom meters for each application, to register and monitor data.

#### Creating a Custom Meter

If there is no custom meter when you register data, a new custom meter is created.



Tip For details about creating a custom meter, refer to the section about new monitoring items and sample registration in API Reference Manual.

#### Acquiring a Custom Meter

You can view the monitoring data from the created custom meter in a graph as statistical values on Service Portal, or you can acquire the data by using an API. You can specify the following parameters when acquiring this data.

- Information that identifies the custom meter
  - Meter name, resource ID, resource metadata
- Statistic type

- Average, minimum, maximum, total, number of samples
- Period for statistics calculation
  - 1 minute (minimum) to 2 weeks (maximum)
- Acquisition period
  - Desired period within the previous two weeks
- Units
  - Units specified when the custom meter was created

## 9.3 Alarms

### 9.3.1 Settings for Alarms

When the specified threshold is exceeded for a monitored resource item or some other monitored item, automated actions such as sending email and auto-scaling are performed.

The item that is monitored, the threshold condition, and the action that is taken when the threshold has been exceeded are handled collectively as an object, which is called an alarm.

#### Creating an Alarm

Specify the items below to create an alarm:

- Information for monitored items  
Meter name, resource ID, resource metadata
- Threshold conditions
  - Threshold condition  
Greater than or equal, less than or equal, less than, greater than
  - Consecutive number of times for threshold condition  
Consecutive number of times the threshold condition must be reached
  - Statistic type  
Average, minimum, maximum, total
  - Period for statistics calculation (alarm check interval)  
1 minute (minimum) to 2 weeks (maximum)
- Action settings

Define actions for each alarm status shown below.



Actions are performed only when the status changes.

Note

Table 151: List of Alarm Statuses

| Status            | Description                                                                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OK                | No abnormality (alarm thresholds have not been exceeded)                                          |
| ALARM             | Alarm threshold condition has been reached                                                        |
| INSUFFICIENT_DATA | Data insufficient to check for alarm<br>Examples: Alarm disabled, monitored item instance stopped |

#### Viewing Alarm History

Table 152: List of Alarm History Items

| Item | Description                                       |
|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Date | This is the date and time for each history entry. |

| Item        |                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type        | Changed Settings | This is the information regarding operation events for an alarm. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Created: Information specified when an alarm was created</li> <li>• Deleted: Information for deleted alarms</li> <li>• Changed settings: Information on alarms before and after changes</li> </ul>                                                                                 |
|             | Change in Status | This is the information regarding status changes. The following information is included: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Statuses before and after changes (Example: OK -&gt; NG)</li> <li>• Reason for change (Example: Threshold exceeded)</li> <li>• Measurements before and after changes</li> <li>• Threshold conditions for monitored items that are set for alarm</li> </ul> |
|             | Actions          | This is the information regarding actions that were performed. The following information is included: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Action results</li> <li>• Notification destination (for email)</li> <li>• Message (for email)</li> <li>• Date and time of change in status that triggered alarm</li> </ul>                                                                    |
| Description |                  | This is a description of each history entry.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



Note

History information is retained for a maximum of two weeks. To save data that is older than two weeks, you must acquire the data by using an API before it is deleted and then save it in another location.

---

# Part 10: Security

---

Topics:

- *IPS/IDS*

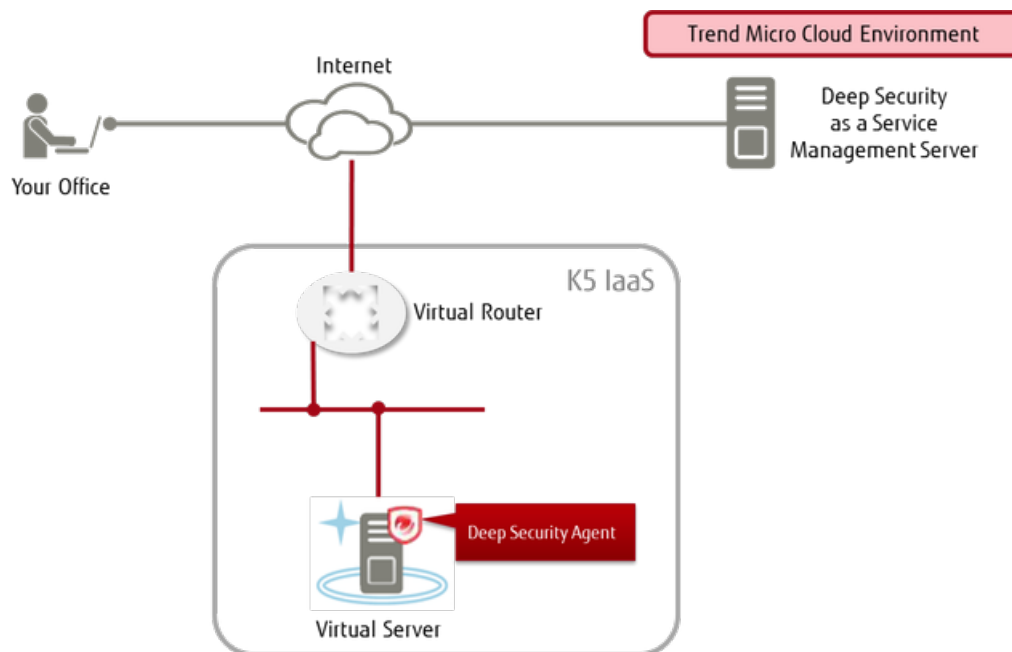
K5 IaaS provides security solutions for virtual servers.

## 10.1 IPS/IDS

### 10.1.1 Trend Micro Deep Security as a Service Option

We have provided the Deep Security as a Service option, which allows you to carry out centralized management of the security functions for your created virtual server, by using the management server provided in the cloud by Trend Micro.

Figure 43: Overall Layout of Trend Micro Deep Security as a Service Option



#### Functions Included

By installing the Deep Security agent software on the virtual server you have created, you can use a multi-layered defense that utilizes the security functions described below.

Table 153: Available Security Functions

| Security Functions   | Description                                                                                      |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IDS/IPS              | Protects the server from attacks that target the vulnerability of the OS or applications         |
| Firewall             | Decreases the chances of an attack by blocking unauthorized communication at the end point       |
| Virus Protection     | Scans the system for viruses in real time and protects the server from malware and other attacks |
| Web Reputation       | Protects web applications from SQL injections and other attacks                                  |
| Integrity Monitoring | Ensures early detection of file or registry tampering                                            |
| Log Monitoring       | Ensures early detection of important security events in the OS or middleware                     |

## License Cancellation

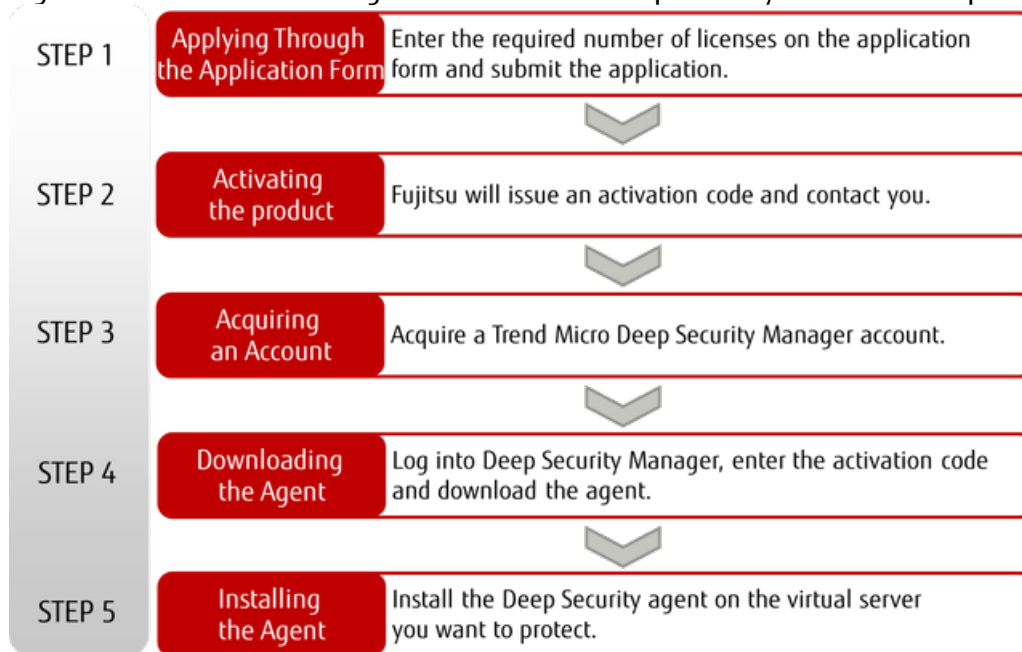
---

In order to cancel a license, you must submit an application for cancellation of the Trend Micro Deep Security as a Service option. For more information, refer to the K5 IaaS service official website.

## How to Use This Service

---

Figure 44: How to Start Using the "Trend Micro Deep Security as a Service" Option



## Points to Note

---

- You must obtain a license for each virtual server.
- Note that you will still be charged per license for this optional service even if you delete the virtual server where the agent is installed.

---

# Part 11: Management

---

## Topics:

- [\*Overview of Functions\*](#)
- [\*Subscription Management\*](#)
- [\*User Management\*](#)
- [\*Key Management\*](#)

K5 IaaS provides a function to manage the privileges for using the K5 resources.

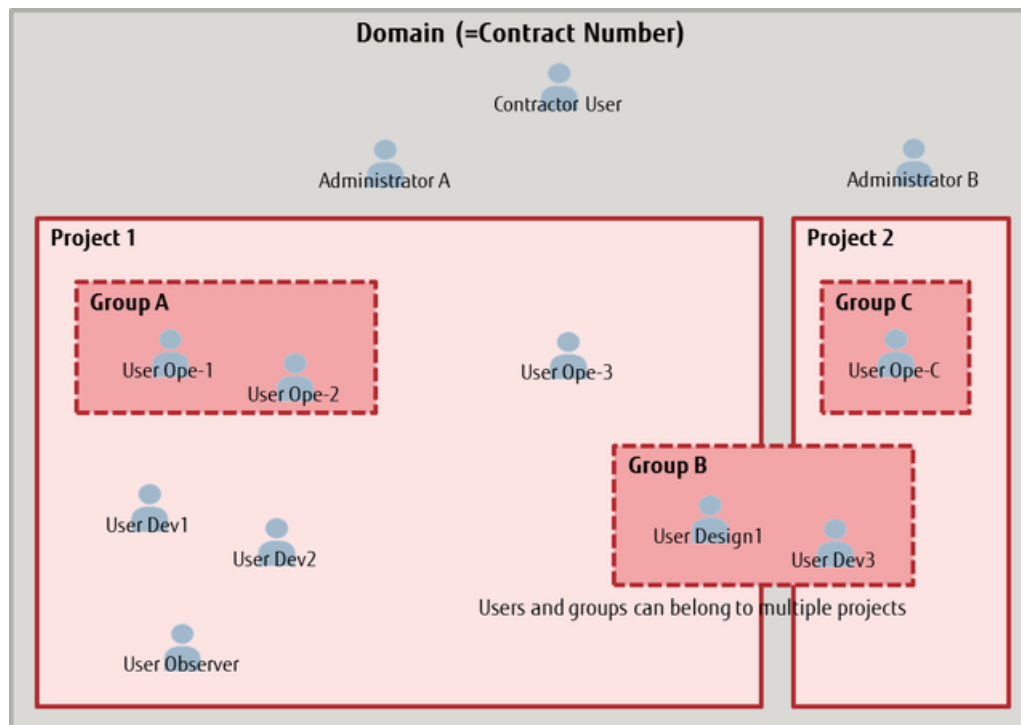
# 11.1 Overview of Functions

## 11.1.1 Information to Know in Advance

This section explains the concepts provided by the user management functions.

With K5 IaaS, the contractor user creates other users, and each user uses their created user name to log in to the system in order to access the services. The users shown in the following figure must be created in order to create and use virtual resources:

Figure 45: Relationship Concepts Provided by the User Management Functions



### Domain

The area available to an organization that has subscribed to this service is shown in units of service contracts. When the organization successfully enters into a license agreement, the system grants a contract number, which is then set as the domain name.

### User

A person who logs in to the system to use the service functions and to manage resources.

### Project

An organization to which the user belongs. More than one project can be created within a domain. Most virtual resources are created under projects, so, for example, you can create and use a different project for each department at your company to implement different styles of system management appropriate to each department.

### Group

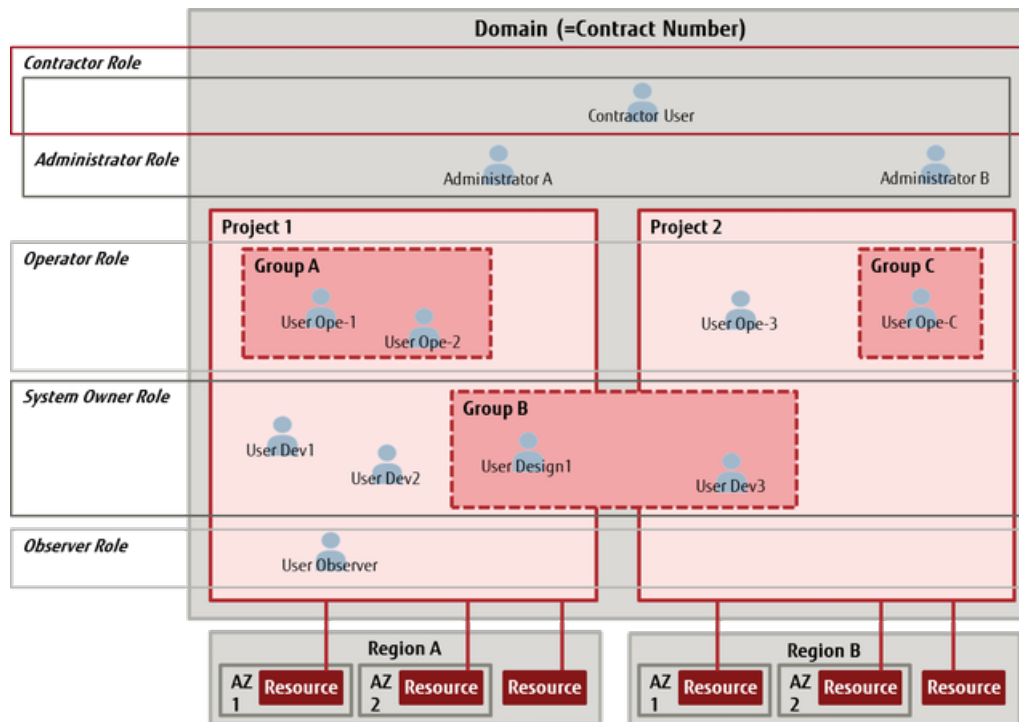
A collection to which multiple users can belong. For example, you can use this to manage user rights collectively.

## Role

The information that is used to assign privileges to users or groups. The following six roles are defined by default. You can assign them according to the role of each user:

- Contractor role
- Administrator role
- System Owner role
- Operator role
- Observer role
- Member role

Figure 46: Domain, Group, and User Relationships



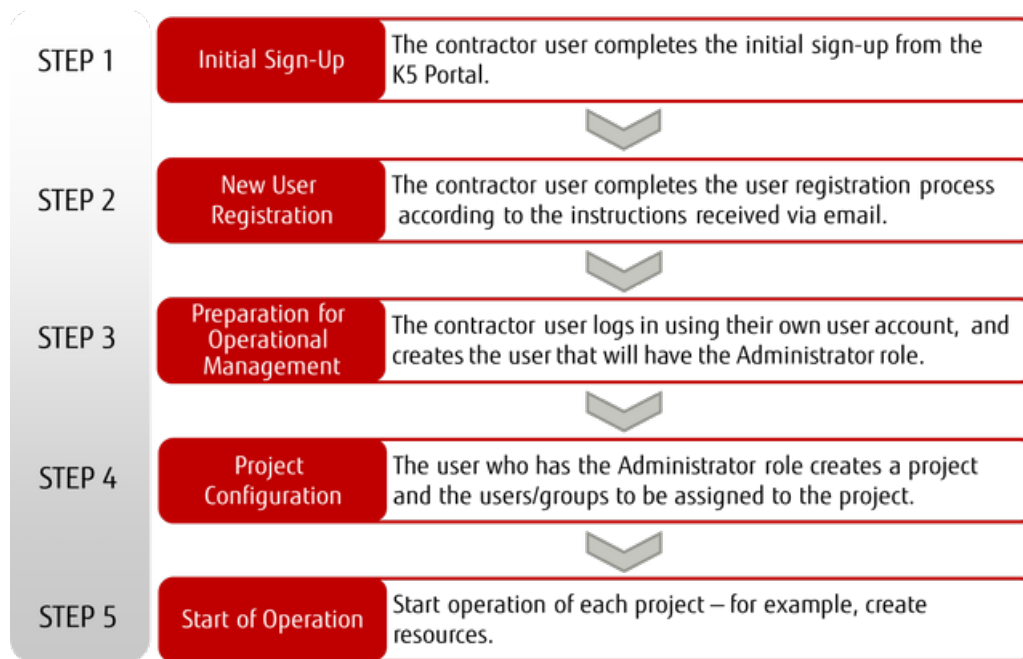
### 11.1.2 Procedure for Starting Operation

To create a domain and projects and start using virtual resources, the contractor user must create the first user. When a new user is created, a single contract number (domain) is assigned.

## User Operation Procedure

---

Figure 47: Procedure from Signup to Start of Operation



For details on new registration and the user management functions, refer to *K5 Portal User's Guide*.

# 11.2 Subscription Management

## 11.2.1 Region Management

This function allows you to activate additional regions in addition to the regions that have been used since the time of the subscription, and to obtain information about regions currently used.



A region can only be managed by the following user:

Note • A user that has the Contractor role

### Functions Included

- Default Region

This region is made available by default when a contract number (domain) is obtained at K5 Portal.



"Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)" is set up as the default region.

Tip

- Region Activation Function

This function allows you to activate and start to use a region that has not been used yet so that you can deploy resources in the region.



Note The region to which this function is applied is not immediately available. Check the state of the region by using the information acquiring function of regions currently in use, and confirm that the region is in an "active" state before you start to use the region.



Important If a region has already been activated with this function, do not use the function again to activate the same region.

- Region List Function

This function displays a list of regions provided as K5 IaaS services.

- Function for Acquiring Information about Regions Currently in Use

This function displays a list of regions that have been activated with the region activation function and the availability of each region.

There are two states:

- active
- ready

You can also obtain information about the default region.

# 11.3 User Management

---

## 11.3.1 Overview of Functions

---

### 11.3.1.1 Global User Management

---

The global user management functions allow you to manage global resources such as users and groups.

#### Global Resources in User Management Services

---

Among the resources managed with the user management services, global resources refer to the following resources that are consistent across all regions:

- Global token
- Contract number (domain)
- User
- Group
- Preset roles

### 11.3.1.2 Regional User Management

---

The regional user management functions allow you to manage regional resources such as projects and role assignments.

#### Regional Resources in User Management Services

---

Among the resources managed with the user management services, regional resources refer to the following resources that are independent from region to region:

- Regional token
- Project
- Role assignment

### 11.3.1.3 Preset Roles and Privileges

---

The combinations of privileges related to the system operations within a domain are defined as preset roles. Preset roles are assigned to groups and users to control the operations involving virtual resources.

#### Contractor Role (cpf\_org\_manager)

---

This role is for the user created at the time of the subscription to the service, and is used to manage the entire contract. The contractor user can cancel the service contract.

#### Administrator Role (cpf\_admin)

---

This role can be created by an administrator. A user with this role is an administrator within the domain, and can handle all the projects within the domain.



Tip

The Contractor role and the Administrator role are assigned to the user created at the time of subscription to the service.

---

## System Owner Role (cpf\_systemowner)

---

This role can be created by the contractor user or an administrator. A user with this role can carry out the operations related to the resources within a project, such as adding and deleting resources, or starting virtual servers.

## Operator Role (cpf\_operator)

---

This role can be created by the contractor user or an administrator. A user with this role can carry out the same operations within a project as a user with the System Owner role, except for adding and deleting resources.

## Observer Role (cpf\_observer)

---

This role can be created by the contractor user or an administrator. A user with this role can monitor the resources within a project.

## Member Role (\_member\_)

---

This role is assigned to all users. This role has general user privileges that allow you to carry out the operations related to your account, such as changing passwords.

## Contractor Role (cpf\_org\_manager\_provisional)

---

This role is for a user newly registered from K5 Portal (until activated).



This role cannot be assigned by the customer.

Note

## Contractor Role (cpf\_org\_manager\_cancelled)

---

This role is for the user during a cancellation process of the K5 service.



This role cannot be assigned by the customer.

Note

## Trial Role (cpf\_trial)

---

This role is for trial users.



This role cannot be assigned by the customer.

Note

## 11.3.2 Global User Management

---

### 11.3.2.1 Group Management

---

#### 11.3.2.1.1 Group Management

---

You can create and delete groups, and manage the users that you assign to a group. You can also collectively manage the users that belong to a group. For example, you can configure their participation in projects and roles.



To enable group management, the following conditions must be met:

Note

- A user has the Administrator role.
- The authentication process is performed using global user management, and global tokens are acquired.

- For group management operations, global user management is used with global tokens.

## Creating a Group

Create a group in a domain. Items that you can specify are as follows.



Note

Although you can create multiple groups in a domain, you cannot assign a group to another group.

Table 154: List of Items That Can Be Set for Groups

| Item              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Required |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Group Name        | Specify the name that identifies the group<br> The group name must be unique within the domain.<br><small>Important</small>       | Yes      |
| Group Description | Specify a description of the group to be created                                                                                                                                                                   |          |
| Domain ID         | Specify the ID of the domain where you wish to create the group<br> Specify the domain to which you belong.<br><small>Tip</small> | Yes      |

## Changing Group Information

Change the settings of an existing group. The items that you can change are as follows:

Table 155: List of Items That Can Be Set for Groups

| Item              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Required |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Group Name        | Specify the name that identifies the group<br> The group name must be unique within the domain.<br><small>Important</small>       | Yes      |
| Group Description | Specify a description of the group to be created                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| Domain ID         | Specify the ID of the domain where you wish to create the group<br> Specify the domain to which you belong.<br><small>Tip</small> | Yes      |

## Adding/Deleting Users in a Group

You can specify users to add to a group or to delete (exclude) from a group.

## Deleting a Group

Delete an existing group.



Even if you delete a group, the users that belong to that group are not deleted.

## Limiting Values

Table 156: List of Limiting Values Related to Domains, Projects, Groups, and Users

| Item               | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Projects | 1,000 per domain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Project Name       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Plus sign (+), equal sign (=), comma (,), period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> <li>Case sensitivity: No</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Number of Groups   | 100 per project                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Group Name         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Plus sign (+), equal sign (=), comma (,), period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> <li>Case sensitivity: No</li> <li>Uniqueness constraint: Uniqueness is required within a domain</li> </ul>                                                                                                    |
| Number of Users    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>100 per group</li> <li>100,000 per domain</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| User Name          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| User Password      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 16 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>!#\$%&amp;'()*+,-./:;&lt;=&gt;?@[\\]^_`{ }~</li> <li>Complexity constraint <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must not contain the user name</li> <li>Must include at least 1 alphabetic character</li> <li>Must include at least 1 numeric character</li> </ul> </li> <li>Case sensitivity: Yes</li> </ul> |
| Email Address      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 5 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Item | Limiting Values                    |
|------|------------------------------------|
|      | !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\\]^_`{ }~ |

## 11.3.3 Regional User Management

### 11.3.3.1 Project Management

#### 11.3.3.1.1 Project Management

This function allows you to divide the virtual resources in the contract into projects to manage them. Use this function when you want to make a clear distinction between the virtual systems used by the organizations or departments inside a company.

To enable a specific user or group to use the virtual resources in a project, you can control the user or group by having them belong to the project.

A user that does not have the Administrator role can only handle the resources within the project to which the user belongs. By combining roles and projects, you can block users from operating the virtual systems of other projects.



To enable project management, the following conditions must be met:

Note

- A user has the Administrator role.
- For the region in which the project to be managed belongs, the authentication process is performed using regional user management, and regional tokens are acquired.
- For project management operations, regional user management is used with regional tokens.

#### Default project

When a user is created from K5 Portal, the default project of the contractor user is set for the created user. Information for the default project is synchronized in all the regions that are currently in use and can be used in each region.



Note

- The default project set for a user cannot be changed.
- Although the information of the default project is synchronized among regions, the virtual resources that belong to the region must be handled using the regional service for each region.

#### Creating a Project

Create projects within a domain. Items that you can specify are as follows.

Table 157: List of Items That Can Be Set for Projects

| Item         | Description                                                                                                                                 | Required |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Project Name | Specify the name of the project                                                                                                             | Yes      |
|              |  <p>The project name must be unique within a region.</p> |          |

| Item                | Description                          | Required |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| Project Description | Specify a description of the project |          |

## Modifying a Project

Change the existing settings of a project. The items that you can change are as follows.

Table 158: List of Items That Can Be Changed for Projects

| Item                | Description                                                                                                                                                                    | Required |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Project Name        | Specify the name of the project<br><br> Note The project name must be unique within a region. | Yes      |
| Project Description | Specify a description of the project                                                                                                                                           |          |

## Disabling a Project

Disable existing projects that are not needed.



Important

If you simply disable a project, the virtual resources belonging to that project are not returned automatically. The operational conditions of the virtual server, global IP address, virtual router, firewall, and such will persist. If you no longer require the virtual resources, return them before disabling the project.

## Limiting Values

Table 159: List of Limiting Values Related to Domains, Projects, Groups, and Users

| Item               | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Projects | 1,000 per domain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Project Name       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Plus sign (+), equal sign (=), comma (,), period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> <li>Case sensitivity: No</li> </ul>                                                                        |
| Number of Groups   | 100 per project                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Group Name         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Plus sign (+), equal sign (=), comma (,), period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> <li>Case sensitivity: No</li> <li>Uniqueness constraint: Uniqueness is required within a domain</li> </ul> |

| Item            | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Users | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>100 per group</li> <li>100,000 per domain</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| User Name       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols: Period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| User Password   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 16 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols: !"#%&amp;'()*+,-./:;&lt;=&gt;?@[\\]^_`{ }~</li> <li>Complexity constraint <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must not contain the user name</li> <li>Must include at least 1 alphabetic character</li> <li>Must include at least 1 numeric character</li> </ul> </li> <li>Case sensitivity: Yes</li> </ul> |
| Email Address   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 5 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols: !"#%&amp;'()*+,-./:;&lt;=&gt;?@[\\]^_`{ }~</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## 11.3.3.2 Role Management

### 11.3.3.2.1 Assigning a Role

Assign roles registered in the system to each user in order to grant operation privileges accordingly.

You can use the standard roles ([Preset Roles and Privileges](#) on page 206).

To include a user or a group in a project, select a role and assign it to the user or group.



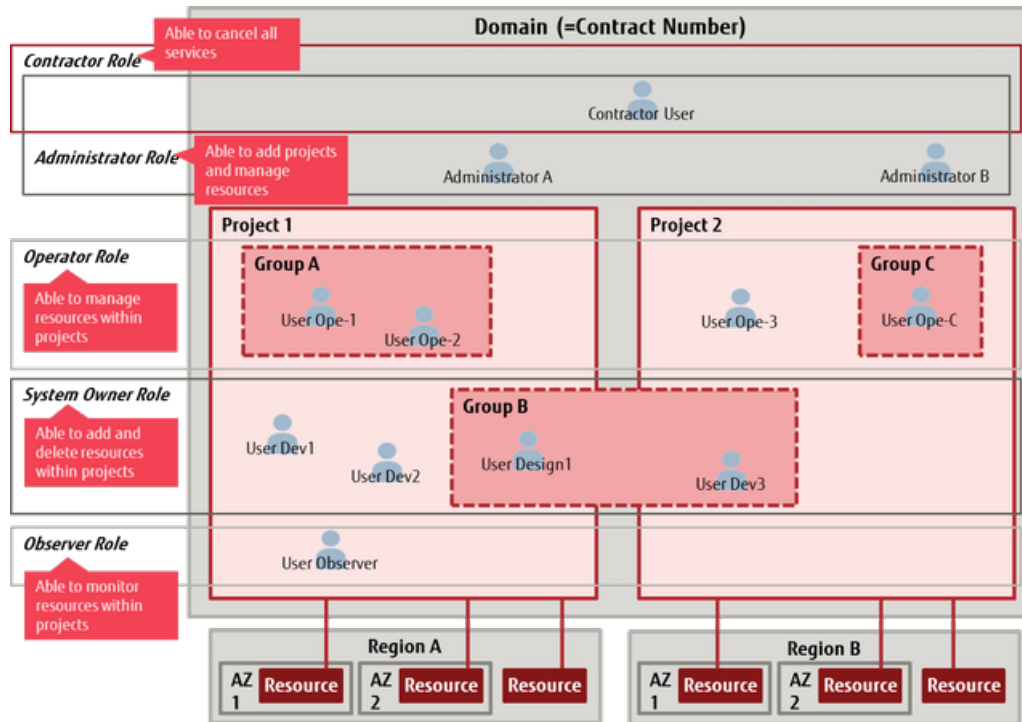
To enable role assignment management, the following conditions must be met:

Note

- A user has the Administrator role.
- For the regions in which the project to be managed belongs, the authentication process is performed using regional user management, and regional tokens are acquired.

- For project management operations, regional user management is used with regional tokens.

Figure 48: Role Assignment Example



## 11.4 Key Management

### 11.4.1 Key Management Function

This function allows you to centrally manage the key information that is required for SSL communication. Users can use key information that they have created and registered as well as key information that is registered by services such as the load distribution service.

#### Managing Key Information

Register and manage key information that was created in PEM format by a user.

Table 160: Registering Key Information (List of Items That Can Be Set)

| Item                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Required                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Key Information Name                         | Specify the name of the key information                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                     |
| Encryption Algorithm                         | Specify the encryption algorithm for the key information to be registered                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                     |
| Mode                                         | Specify the mode of the algorithm associated with confidential information                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                     |
| Key Length                                   | Specify a key length that is a multiple of 8 to be used for encryption                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                     |
| Retention Period                             | <p>When the specified retention period is exceeded, the registered key information will be deleted automatically. If this setting is omitted, no limit is set on use of the key information</p> <p> Specify a future date and time in the following format: "YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.SSSSSS"</p>                                                                                                                |                                                     |
| Confidential Information                     | <p>Specify confidential information to be registered</p> <p> This information must be enclosed between "-----BEGIN XXXX-----" and "-----END XXXX-----".</p> <p> No check is performed to determine if the specified confidential information is in PEM format. Be sure to check in advance if the format is correct.</p> |                                                     |
| Content Type for Confidential Information    | <p>Specify the content type to be used when viewing confidential information</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• text/plain</li><li>• application/octetstream</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Required when confidential information is specified |
| Encoding Format for Confidential Information | <p>Specify an encoding format (base64)</p> <p> If you specified "text/plain" as the content type for confidential information, you cannot configure this setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                     |

PEM format refers to the following type of text data:

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIE+TCCA
+GgAwIBAgIQU306HIX4KsioTW1s2A2krTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBtTELMakGA1UEBh
MCVVMxZzAVBgNVBAoTDlZlcmlTaWduLCBjb250bW8wHQYDVQQL.....
NM856xjqhJCPxYzk9buuCl1B4Kzu0CTbexz/iEgYV
+DiuTxcfA4uhwMDSe0nynbnlqiwrk450mConq
H4ly4P4lXo02t4A/DI1I8ZNct/Qfl69a2Lf6vc9rF7BELT0e5YR7CKx7fc5xRaeQdyGj/
dJevm9BF/mSdnclS5vas=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

## Managing Certificate Information

---

Manage the following key information required for SSL communication as a single set of certificate information:

- SSL Certificate
- CA Certificate (including information for intermediate certification authorities)
- Private Key
- DH (Diffie Hellman) Key

---

# Part 12: Private Connection

---

## Topics:

- [Overview of Functions](#)

This service provides the functions and ports for a closed connection between the K5 environment and an environment such as a hosting environment to which the user subscribes or an on-premises environment.

## 12.1 Overview of Functions

---

### 12.1.1 Private Connection Function

---

This function provides the features and ports for a closed connection between the K5 environment and another environment, such as the hosting environment to which the contractor user subscribes or an on-premises environment.

#### Provided Service Menu

---

- K5 environment connection
- Data center outsourcing environment connection
- On-premises (FENICS) connection
- Cloud connection provided by other company
- Connection between regions



Tip

For further details about this service, refer to the "FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 - Private Connection Service Descriptions."

---

### 12.1.2 Direct Port Connection Function

---

This function provides physical ports for a direct connection to the K5 environment via L3, not via the Internet or a private connection function.

#### Provided Service Menu

---

- Direct port connection



Tip

For further details about this service, refer to the "FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 - Private Connection Service Descriptions."

---

---

# Appendix

---

## A.1 Limiting Values

---

This section shows the limiting values for the resources available in each service.

### Limiting Values Related to Compute

---

- Standard Services

Table 161: List of Limiting Values Related to Virtual Servers

| Item                                                                | Limiting Values                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Number of Virtual Servers                                           | Up to 20 per project per availability zone   |
| Number of Virtual CPUs (vCPUs)                                      | 80 per project per availability zone         |
| Memory Capacity (total for a project)                               | 327,680 MB per project per availability zone |
| Number of Metadata Items that Can Be Specified for a Virtual Server | 128 per virtual server                       |
| Number of Key Pairs                                                 | 100 per project per availability zone        |

Table 162: List of Limiting Values Related to Virtual Server Import Service

| Item                                                            | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Possible Number of Virtual Server Import Requests               | 100 per domain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Maximum Execution Period of Virtual Server Import Processing    | 7 days                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Number of Virtual Server Import Processing Results Retained     | 1,000<br> If this limiting value is exceeded, the oldest processing results are deleted.                                                                           |
| File Size of a Single Virtual Server Image (Size in Raw Format) | 300 GB<br> .vmdk files that are divided and uploaded separately are automatically converted into Raw format. This limiting value is the size after Raw conversion. |

Table 163: List of Limiting Values Related to Virtual Server Export Service

| Item                                                                  | Limiting Values |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Possible Number of Virtual Server Export Requests for a Single Domain | 100 records     |

| Item                                                                   | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Possible Number of Virtual Server Export Requests for a Single Project | 50                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Maximum Execution Period of Virtual Server Export Processing           | 7 days                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Number of Virtual Server Export Processing Results Retained            | 1,000<br> If this limiting value is exceeded, the oldest processing results are deleted. |
| File Size of a Single Virtual Server Image (Size in Raw Format)        | 300 GB                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Maximum Simultaneous Execution Number for a Single Domain              | 5                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Maximum Simultaneous Execution Number for a Single Project             | 2                                                                                                                                                                         |

- Services for SAP

**Table 164: List of Limiting Values Related to Virtual Server for SAP and Dedicated Virtual Server for SAP**

| Item                                        | Limiting Values                             |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| System Storage                              | The size is fixed according to the OS image |
| Additional Storage                          | 0.1 - 2,048 GB                              |
| Number of Storage Systems that Can Be Added | 1 - 55                                      |
| Number of Snapshots Taken                   | 10                                          |
| Number of Ports that Can Be Added           | 1 - 9                                       |

## Limiting Values Related to Storage

**Table 165: List of Limiting Values Related to Block Storage**

| Item                                   | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Size of Additional Storage             | 1 GB or more (specified in GB)                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Number of Storage Systems              | 50 per project per availability zone<br> Note The total number of additional storage systems and additional ports must be no more than 26 for a single virtual server. |
| Storage Capacity (total for a project) | 5,000 GB per project per availability zone                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| Item                      | Limiting Values                       |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Number of Snapshots Taken | 100 per project per availability zone |

Table 166: List of Limiting Values Related to Object Storage

| Item                                | Limiting Values          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Number of Objects per User          | Unlimited                |
| Number of Objects per Container     | Unlimited                |
| Length of Object Name               | 1,024 bytes or less      |
| Size of Object that Can Be Uploaded | 0 - 5 GB                 |
| Length of Object Metadata Name      | 128 bytes or less        |
| Length of Object Metadata           | 2,048 bytes or less      |
| Number of Containers per User       | Unlimited                |
| Length of Container Name            | 256 bytes or less        |
| Uniqueness of Container Name        | Unique name in a project |
| Length of Container Metadata Name   | 128 bytes or less        |
| Length of Container Metadata        | 2,048 bytes or less      |

## Limiting Values Related to Networking

Table 167: List of Limiting Values Related to Networking

| Item                                                       | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Networks                                         | 10 per project per availability zone                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Number of Subnets                                          | 10 per project per availability zone                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Number of Host Routes that Can Be Set for the Subnet       | 20 per project                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Number of Ports                                            | 50 per project per availability zone<br> Note The total number of additional storage systems and additional ports must be no more than 26 for a single virtual server.          |
| Number of Allowed Address Pairs that Can Be Set for Ports  | 10 per project per availability zone                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Number of Global IP Addresses                              | 50 per project per availability zone                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Number of Security Groups                                  | 10 per project                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Number of Rules that Can Be Specified for a Security Group | 100 per project<br> Note This is the number of rules that can be specified for the entire security group. Note that this is not the number allowed for a single security group. |

| Item                                                  | Limiting Values                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Number of Virtual Routers                             | 10 per project per availability zone |
| Number of Routes that Can Be Set for a Virtual Router | 128 per virtual router               |
| Number of Firewalls                                   | 10 per project per availability zone |
| Number of Firewall Policies                           | 1 per firewall                       |
| Number of Firewall Rules                              | 500 per firewall policy              |

**Table 168: List of Limiting Values Related to the Load Balancer Service**

| Item                             | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Load Balancer Name               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 30 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and hyphens (-)</li> </ul> |
| Number of Load Balancers Created | 20 per project                                                                                                                                         |
| Number of Policies Created       | 100 per load balancer                                                                                                                                  |
| Maximum Number of Connections    | 32,768 per subnet                                                                                                                                      |

**Table 169: List of Limiting Values Related to DNS Zone Management**

| Item                                                               | Limiting Values     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Number of DNS Zones Registered                                     | 100 per domain      |
| Time To Live (TTL) for Cache that Can Be Specified                 | 60 - 86,400 seconds |
| Maximum Number of Records for Bulk Acquisition of Zone Information | 100 records         |

**Table 170: List of Limiting Values Related to DNS Record Management**

| Item                                    | Limiting Values             |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Number of Records that Can Be Specified | 10,000 per zone             |
| Supported Record Type                   | A, AAAA, CNAME, MX, NS, TXT |
| Record Type with Wildcard Support       | A, AAAA, MX, CNAME, TXT     |

**Table 171: List of Limiting Values for DNS Record Entries**

| Record Type | Item        | Limitations                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A           | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@) |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |

| Record Type | Item                     | Limitations                                                                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | Value                    | Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)<br>Must be a valid IPv4 address               |
|             | Memo                     | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                               |
|             | Weight                   | 0 - 100<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                      |
|             | Health Check IP Address  | Length: 1 - 32 characters<br>Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)                                            |
|             | Health Check Port Number | Length: 1 - 5 characters<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                     |
|             | Health Check Host Name   | Length: 0 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Single-byte characters                               |
|             | Health Check Path        | Available character type: Single-byte characters                                                             |
| AAAA        | Record Name              | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@) |
|             | TTL                      | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                          |
|             | Value                    | Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)<br>Must be a valid IPv6 address                                         |
|             | Memo                     | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                               |
|             | Weight                   | 0 - 100<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                      |
|             | Health Check IP Address  | Length: 1 - 32 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and dots (.)                  |
|             | Health Check Port Number | Length: 1 - 5 characters<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                     |
|             | Health Check Host Name   | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Single-byte characters                               |
|             | Health Check Path        | Available character type: Single-byte characters                                                             |

| Record Type | Item        | Limitations                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CNAME       | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@) |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, multi-byte domains, dots (.), and hyphens (-)         |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
| MX          | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@)                           |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, multi-byte domains, dots (.), and hyphens (-)         |
|             | Priority    | 0 - 64000<br>Available character type: Numeric characters                                                                              |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
| TXT         | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), hyphens (-), wildcards (*), and at marks (@) |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Alphanumeric characters, single-byte spaces, and single-byte symbols other than double quotation marks (")                             |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                                                         |
| NS          | Record Name | Character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), and hyphens (-)                                                                     |
|             | TTL         | 60 - 86,400 seconds                                                                                                                    |
|             | Value       | Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, multi-byte domains, dots (.), and hyphens (-)                                       |

| Record Type | Item        | Limitations                                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                            |
| LBR         | Record Name | Length: 1 - 63 characters<br>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, dots (.), and hyphens (-) |
|             | Memo        | Length: 1 - 255 characters<br>Available character type: Double-byte characters                            |

## Limiting Values Related to Database as a Service

Table 172: List of Limiting Values Related to Database as a Service

| Item                                              | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Virtual Database Servers                | 40 per project                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Total Disk Size of All Virtual Database Servers   | 100 TB                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Number of DB Snapshots that Can Be Created        | 50 generations per virtual database server                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Maximum Capacity of DB                            | 10 TB                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Number of DB Subnet Groups                        | 20                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Number of DB Subnets                              | 20 per subnet group                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Number of DB Parameter Groups                     | 50                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Number of Event Notification Registrations        | 20                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Number of Read Replicas                           | 5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Specification of the virtual database server name | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and hyphens (-)</li> <li>Other limitations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use an alphabetic character as the first character</li> <li>You cannot use a hyphen as the first character</li> <li>You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Description of Virtual Database Server            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 1,024 characters</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Master User Name                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 63 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and underscores (_)</li> <li>Other limitations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can only use an alphabetic character or underscore as the first character</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                                                                                   |

| Item                 | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Master User Password | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 1,024 characters</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| DB Snapshot Name     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and hyphens (-)</li> <li>Other limitations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name must begin with an alphabetic character</li> <li>You cannot use a hyphen as the first character</li> <li>You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| Read Replica Name    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and hyphens (-)</li> <li>Other limitations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name must begin with an alphabetic character</li> <li>You cannot use a hyphen as the first character</li> <li>You cannot use two or more consecutive hyphens</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

## Limiting Values Related to the Email Delivery Service

Table 173: List of Limiting Values Related to the Email Delivery Service

| Item                                                    | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum Number of Emails Sent per Second                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Using API: 50 (1 request/second x 50 recipients)</li> <li>Using SMTP interface: 500</li> </ul>                                                                                                                      |
| Maximum Number of Registered Email Addresses per Domain | 1,000                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Maximum Number of Requests per Second                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10 (different requests)</li> <li>1 (same request)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                        |
| Number of Recipients per Request                        | 50                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Maximum Size per Email                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Using API: 2 MB</li> <li>Using SMTP interface: 10 MB</li> </ul> <div>  This includes email attachments. </div> <div> Note </div> |

## Limiting Values Related to the Content Delivery Service

Table 174: List of Limiting Values Related to Content Delivery

| Item                                                      | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Time until the Content Delivery Service Becomes Available | <p>Within 10 minutes</p> <p> This is the time from when application of delivery settings is requested from the API.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Time Required for Deleting Cache                          | <p>Within 10 minutes</p> <p> This is the time from when deleting of cache is requested from the API.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Number of Delivery Settings that Can Be Created           | 200 per project                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Caching Behavior Control Rules that Can Be Created        | 100 behaviors per delivery setting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| File Size that Can Be Delivered                           | 1.8 GB (single file)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Number of Files that Can Be Maintained on the Edge Server | No upper limit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Maximum Size of Caching Behavior Control Rules            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sending: 16 KB</li> </ul> <p> This value is the total of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User-specified length</li> <li>• Delivery FQDN length x Number of behaviors of origin settings</li> </ul> <p>• Receiving: No upper limit</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Characters that Can Be Specified for FQDN Information     | <p>For assigned domains</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Characters that can be specified for the prefix: 0 - 30 characters</li> <li>• Character type: Alphanumeric characters and hyphens (-)</li> </ul> <p>For unique domains</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Characters that can be specified for FQDN: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>• Character type: Alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-), and periods (.)</li> </ul> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uppercase alphabetic characters are treated as the corresponding lowercase character.</li> <li>• You cannot use a hyphen as the first or last character.</li> <li>• You cannot specify "xn--."</li> </ul> |

| Item                                                                              | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cache TTL that Can Be Specified                                                   | 0 - 9999 days                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Number of API Execution Limits per Second (Rate Limiting)                         | <p>There are execution limits per second for some APIs.</p> <p> If you receive status code 429, wait a while and retry the operation.</p> |
| Volume of Concurrent Access Possible                                              | No upper limits for edge servers.                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Characters that Can Be Specified for the Prefix of Access Log Storage Destination | <p>1 - 256 characters</p> <p> This includes the account name and the container name.</p>                                                  |

## Limiting Values Related to the Template Service

Table 175: List of Limiting Values Related to Orchestration

| Item                                                                | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Stacks that Can Be Created                                | 1,000 per project                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Stack Name                                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), hyphens (-), and periods (.)</li> </ul> |
| Number of Resources that Can Be Included in a Stack                 | 1,000 per stack                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Number of Events that Can Be Created                                | <p>1,000 per stack</p> <p> If this limiting value is exceeded, the oldest events are deleted.</p>   |
| Size of Template File that Can Be Specified when a Stack Is Created | 512 KB or less                                                                                                                                                                         |

## Limiting Values Related to Management Functions

Table 176: List of Limiting Values Related to Tokens

| Item                        | Limiting Values  |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| Number of Global Tokens     | 5,000 per domain |
| Expiration of Global Tokens | 3 hours          |
| Number of Regional Tokens   | 5,000 per domain |

| Item                          | Limiting Values |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Expiration of Regional Tokens | 3 hours         |

Table 177: List of Limiting Values Related to Domains, Projects, Groups, and Users

| Item               | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Projects | 1,000 per domain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Project Name       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Plus sign (+), equal sign (=), comma (,), period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> <li>Case sensitivity: No</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Number of Groups   | 100 per project                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Group Name         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Plus sign (+), equal sign (=), comma (,), period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> <li>Case sensitivity: No</li> <li>Uniqueness constraint: Uniqueness is required within a domain</li> </ul>                                                                                                    |
| Number of Users    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>100 per group</li> <li>100,000 per domain</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| User Name          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 4 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>Period (.), at mark (@), hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| User Password      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 16 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:<br/>!#\$%&amp;'()*+,-./:;&lt;=&gt;?@[\\]^_`{ }~</li> <li>Complexity constraint <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must not contain the user name</li> <li>Must include at least 1 alphabetic character</li> <li>Must include at least 1 numeric character</li> </ul> </li> <li>Case sensitivity: Yes</li> </ul> |
| Email Address      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 5 - 64 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols:</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Item | Limiting Values                    |
|------|------------------------------------|
|      | !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\\]^_`{ }~ |

Table 178: List of Values Related to Password Policies

| Item                     | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Minimum Character Length | 16 characters                                                                                                                                                     |
| Minimum Days             | 1 day                                                                                                                                                             |
| Effective Days           | 90 days                                                                                                                                                           |
| Lockout                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Duration: 15 minutes</li> <li>Number of invalid attempts: 5</li> <li>Time from locking to unlocking: 15 minutes</li> </ul> |
| History                  | The same password string as any of the last 4 passwords is not allowed.                                                                                           |

Table 179: List of Limiting Values Related to Key Management Functions

| Item                                                                      | Limiting Values                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Key Information Container Name                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and single-byte symbols</li> </ul> |
| Number of Key Information Containers                                      | 100                                                                                                                                                             |
| Key Information Records that Can Be Stored in a Key Information Container | 10 per key information container                                                                                                                                |
| Number of Key Information Records                                         | 100                                                                                                                                                             |
| Key Information Name                                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Length: 1 - 255 characters</li> <li>Available character type: Alphanumeric characters and single-byte symbols</li> </ul> |
| Size of Key Information                                                   | 10,000 bytes or less                                                                                                                                            |

## A.2 Points to Note

This section explains points to note regarding K5 IaaS services.

### Points to Note regarding the Infrastructure within Availability Zones

If a hardware failure occurs in an availability zone, it may affect your virtual resources as follows:

- Block storage
  - I/O delays up to 180 seconds
- Network/subnet/virtual router/network connector
  - Communication disconnections up to 335 seconds

## A.3 List of Software Support Service IDs

### ID Used with the Software Support Service

The list of ID for each type of software and support level is shown below.

Table 180: List of Software Support Service Related ID

| Software                                               | Software ID | Support Level       | Support ID  |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------|
| Windows Server 2008 SE R2 SP1<br>64bit English Version | W2k8R2SE    | No support          | nosupport   |
|                                                        |             | Support on weekdays | spt_daytime |
|                                                        |             | 24-hour support     | spt_24h     |
| Windows Server 2008 EE R2 SP1<br>64bit English Version | W2k8R2EE    | No support          | nosupport   |
|                                                        |             | Support on weekdays | spt_daytime |
|                                                        |             | 24-hour support     | spt_24h     |
| Windows Server 2012 SE R2<br>64bit English Version     | W2k12R2SE   | No support          | nosupport   |
|                                                        |             | Support on weekdays | spt_daytime |
|                                                        |             | 24-hour support     | spt_24h     |
| Windows Server 2012 SE 64bit<br>English Version        | W2k12SE     | No support          | nosupport   |
|                                                        |             | Support on weekdays | spt_daytime |
|                                                        |             | 24-hour support     | spt_24h     |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5<br>64bit English Version  | RHEL        | Support on weekdays | spt_daytime |
|                                                        |             | 24-hour support     | spt_24h     |
| Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2<br>64bit English Version  | RHEL        | Support on weekdays | spt_daytime |
|                                                        |             | 24-hour support     | spt_24h     |
| CentOS 6.5 64bit English Version                       | CentOS6.5   | No support          | nosupport   |
| CentOS 7.2 64bit English Version                       | CentOS      | No support          | nosupport   |
| Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS English<br>Version             | UBUNTU      | No support          | nosupport   |
| Microsoft SQL Server 2014 SE<br>64bit English Version  | MSSQL2K14SE | No support          | nosupport   |
|                                                        |             | Support on weekdays | spt_daytime |

| Software                                                         | Software ID  | Support Level   | Support ID |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|
|                                                                  |              | 24-hour support | spt_24h    |
| Interstage Application Server Standard-J Edition V11             | INTER_S_L11  | 24-hour support | spt_24h    |
| Symfoware Server Lite Edition V12                                | SYMFO_L_L12  | 24-hour support | spt_24h    |
| Systemwalker Operation Manager Standard Edition V13              | SYSWO_S_L13  | 24-hour support | spt_24h    |
| Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Managers) V15 | SYSWCM_S_L15 | 24-hour support | spt_24h    |
| Systemwalker Centric Manager Standard Edition (for Agents) V15   | SYSWCA_S_L15 | 24-hour support | spt_24h    |

## A.4 Common Network Services

The following common network services are provided and available on virtual networks:

- DNS server (name resolution on the network)
- yum repository mirror server
- Red Hat Update Infrastructure (RHUI)
- Windows activation (KMS)
- NTP server

The following is a list of servers that provide common network services:

### DNS Server

Table 181: Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)

| Availability Zone | Name Server 1 | Name Server 2  |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| jp-east-1a        | 133.162.193.9 | 133.162.193.10 |
| jp-east-1b        | 133.162.201.9 | 133.162.201.10 |

Table 182: Western Japan Region 1 (jp-west-1)

| Availability Zone | Name Server 1 | Name Server 2  |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| jp-west-1a        | 133.162.161.9 | 133.162.161.10 |
| jp-west-1b        | 133.162.169.9 | 133.162.169.10 |

Table 183: Western Japan Region 2 (jp-west-2)

| Availability Zone | Name Server 1 | Name Server 2  |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| jp-west-2a        | 133.162.145.9 | 133.162.145.10 |

| Availability Zone | Name Server 1 | Name Server 2  |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| jp-west-2b        | 133.162.153.9 | 133.162.153.10 |

Table 184: UK Region 1 (uk-1)

| Availability Zone | Name Server 1 | Name Server 2 |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
| uk-1a             | 62.60.39.9    | 62.60.39.10   |
| uk-1b             | 62.60.42.9    | 62.60.42.10   |

## yum repository mirror server

Table 185: Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | yum.jp-east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

Table 186: Western Japan Region 1 (jp-west-1)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | yum.jp-west-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

Table 187: Western Japan Region 2 (jp-west-2)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | yum.jp-west-2.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

Table 188: UK Region 1 (uk-1)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                              |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | yum.uk-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

## Windows Activation (KMS)

Table 189: Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | kms.jp-east-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

Table 190: Western Japan Region 1 (jp-west-1)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | kms.jp-west-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

Table 191: Western Japan Region 2 (jp-west-2)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                                   |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | kms.jp-west-2.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

Table 192: UK Region 1 (uk-1)

| Availability Zone | FQDN                              |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Common to all AZ  | kms.uk-1.cloud.global.fujitsu.com |

## NTP Server

Table 193: Eastern Japan Region 1 (jp-east-1)

| Availability Zone | NTP Server 1    | NTP Server 2    |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| jp-east-1a        | 133.162.193.106 | 133.162.195.141 |
| jp-east-1b        | 133.162.203.207 | 133.162.203.208 |

Table 194: Western Japan Region 1 (jp-west-1)

| Availability Zone | NTP Server 1   | NTP Server 2   |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| jp-west-1a        | 133.162.161.19 | 133.162.161.20 |
| jp-west-1b        | 133.162.169.19 | 133.162.169.20 |

Table 195: Western Japan Region 2 (jp-west-2)

| Availability Zone | NTP Server 1   | NTP Server 2   |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| jp-west-2a        | 133.162.145.19 | 133.162.145.20 |

| Availability Zone | NTP Server 1   | NTP Server 2   |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| jp-west-2b        | 133.162.153.19 | 133.162.153.20 |

Table 196: UK Region 1 (uk-1)

| Availability Zone | NTP Server 1 | NTP Server 2 |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|
| uk-1a             | 62.60.39.19  | 62.60.39.20  |
| uk-1b             | 62.60.42.19  | 62.60.42.20  |

## A.5 Domains That Can Be Registered in a Zone

The domains that you can register in a zone are as follows.

Table 197: List of Domains That Can Be Registered in a Zone

|          |         |          |         |         |
|----------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| .ae.org  | .ar.com | .br.com  | .cn.com | .de.com |
| .eu.com  | .eu.org | .gb.com  | .gb.net | .hu.com |
| .jpn.com | .kr.com | .no.com  | .qc.com | .ru.com |
| .sa.com  | .se.com | .se.net  | .uk.com | .uk.net |
| .us.com  | .uy.com | .web.com | .za.com | .za.net |
| .za.org  | .ac     | .ae      | .aero   | .af     |
| .ag      | .ai     | .al      | .am     | .edu.ar |
| .ar      | .arpa   | .as      | .asia   | .at     |
| .asn.au  | .com.au | .id.au   | .net.au | .org.au |
| .au      | .az     | .ba      | .be     | .bg     |
| .bi      | .biz    | .bj      | .bm     | .bo     |
| .br      | .bs     | .bv      | .by     | .bz     |
| .co.ca   | .ca     | .cat     | .cc     | .cd     |
| .cg      | .ch     | .ci      | .ck     | .cl     |
| .co.cm   | .com.cm | .net.cm  | .edu.cn | .cn     |
| .com     | .coop   | .cu      | .cx     | .cy     |
| .cz      | .de     | .dk      | .dm     | .do     |
| .dz      | .ec     | .edu     | .ee     | .eg     |
| .es      | .eu     | .fi      | .fj     | .fm     |
| .fo      | .fr     | .gd      | .gi     | .gov    |
| .gg      | .gm     | .gp      | .gr     | .gs     |
| .gt      | .hk     | .hm      | .hn     | .hr     |
| .ht      | .hu     | .id      | .ie     | .il     |
| .in      | .info   | .int     | .io     | .ir     |
| .im      | .is     | .it      | .je     | .jobs   |

|                |              |              |              |             |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| .jp            | .ke          | .kp          | .kg          | .ki         |
| .kr            | .kz          | .la          | .lb          | .lc         |
| .li            | .lk          | .lt          | .lu          | .lv         |
| .ly            | .ma          | .md          | .me          | .mil        |
| .mk            | .mm          | .mn          | .mobi        | .ms         |
| .mt            | .mu          | .museum      | .mw          | .mx         |
| .my            | .na          | .name        | .net         | .nf         |
| .ng            | .nl          | .no          | .nu          | .nz         |
| .org           | .pa          | .pe          | .pk          | .pl         |
| .pm            | .pr          | .pro         | .ps          | .pt         |
| .pw            | .re          | .ro          | .edu.ru      | .ru         |
| .rw            | .sa          | .sb          | .sc          | .se         |
| .sg            | .sh          | .si          | .sj          | .sk         |
| .sl            | .sm          | .sn          | .so          | .sr         |
| .st            | .su          | .sv          | .tc          | .tel        |
| .tf            | .tg          | .th          | .tj          | .tk         |
| .tl            | .tm          | .tn          | .to          | .tr         |
| .travel        | .tt          | .tv          | .tw          | .ua         |
| .ug            | .ac.uk       | .gov.uk      | .uk          | .fed.us     |
| .us            | .com.uy      | .uy          | .co.uz       | .com.uz     |
| .uz            | .va          | .vc          | .ve          | .vi         |
| .vg            | .vn          | .vu          | .wf          | .ws         |
| .xn--mgbam7a8h | .yt          | .yu          | .ac.za       | .org.za     |
| .co.za         | .nom.za      | .co.zw       | co.jp        | or.jp       |
| ne.jp          | ac.jp        | ad.jp        | ed.jp        | go.jp       |
| gr.jp          | lg.jp        | hokkaido.jp  | aomori.jp    | iwate.jp    |
| miyagi.jp      | akita.jp     | yamagata.jp  | fukushima.jp | ibaraki.jp  |
| tochigi.jp     | gunma.jp     | saitama.jp   | chiba.jp     | tokyo.jp    |
| kanagawa.jp    | niigata.jp   | toyama.jp    | ishikawa.jp  | fukui.jp    |
| yamanashi.jp   | nagano.jp    | gifu.jp      | shizuoka.jp  | aichi.jp    |
| mie.jp         | shiga.jp     | kyoto.jp     | osaka.jp     | hyogo.jp    |
| nara.jp        | wakayama.jp  | tottori.jp   | shimane.jp   | okayama.jp  |
| hiroshima.jp   | yamaguchi.jp | tokushima.jp | kagawa.jp    | ehime.jp    |
| kochi.jp       | fukuoka.jp   | saga.jp      | nagasaki.jp  | kumamoto.jp |
| oita.jp        | miyazaki.jp  | kagoshima.jp | okinawa.jp   |             |

## A.6 Predefined Security Policies

This section provides information about configurable security policies for listeners when you create a load balancer.

### Predefined SSL Security Policies

We recommend that you use the most recent predefined security policies. The table below provides details about the most recent predefined security policies, including available SSL protocols and SSL cipher suites.

Table 198: Security Policy Name: "LBServiceSecurityPolicy-2015-12"

| SSL Protocol | SSL Cipher Suite (Fixed)              |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| SSL 3.0      | SSL_RSA_WITH_IDEA_CBC_SHA             |
|              | SSL_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA         |
|              | SSL_DHE_DSS_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA     |
|              | SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA     |
| TLS 1.0      | TLS_RSA_WITH_IDEA_CBC_SHA             |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA         |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA     |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA     |
| TLS 1.1      | TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA          |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA          |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA      |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA      |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA      |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA      |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_CAMELLIA_128_CBC_SHA     |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_CAMELLIA_256_CBC_SHA     |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_CAMELLIA_128_CBC_SHA |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_CAMELLIA_256_CBC_SHA |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_CAMELLIA_128_CBC_SHA |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_CAMELLIA_256_CBC_SHA |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_SEED_CBC_SHA             |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_SEED_CBC_SHA         |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_SEED_CBC_SHA         |
| TLS 1.0/1.1  | TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA    |
|              | TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA     |
|              | TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA     |
|              | TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA  |
|              | TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA   |

| SSL Protocol | SSL Cipher Suite (Fixed)                |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------|
|              | TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA     |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA     |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA      |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA      |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA   |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA    |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA    |
| TLS 1.2      | TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256         |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256         |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256         |
|              | TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384         |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256     |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256     |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256     |
|              | TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384     |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256     |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256     |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256     |
|              | TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384     |
|              | TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256    |
|              | TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384    |
|              | TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256    |
|              | TLS_ECDH_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384    |
|              | TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256  |
|              | TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384  |
|              | TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256  |
|              | TLS_ECDH_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384  |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256   |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384   |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256   |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384   |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256 |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384 |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256 |
|              | TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384 |

## A.7 Lists of Monitored Items

Lists of the standard metrics provided with the monitoring service are shown below.

### Common Specifications

The measurements for monitored items are divided into the following three types.

Table 199: Monitored Items - Types of Metering

| Type       | Description                                                                                                                                       |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cumulative | Displays the cumulative value. This is the cumulative figure for values that are always increasing or decreasing                                  |
| gauge      | Displays discrete/fluctuating values. This is an instantaneous value when samples are collected                                                   |
| delta      | Displays the differential value. This is the amount of change during the collection interval for values that are always increasing or decreasing. |

These types are abbreviated as C, G, and D in the following tables.

### Network

Table 200: Network Services - List of Monitored Items

| Monitored Item  | Type | Units | Description                   |
|-----------------|------|-------|-------------------------------|
| fcx.ip.floating | G    | ip    | Number of global IP addresses |

Table 201: Load Distribution Service - List of Monitored Items

| Monitored Item                       | Type | Units    | Description                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------|------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fcx.loadbalancing.instance.healthy   | G    | instance | Number of virtual servers running normally for each subnet                  |
| fcx.loadbalancing.instance.unhealthy | G    | instance | Number of virtual servers that are experiencing abnormality for each subnet |
| fcx.loadbalancing.throughput         | D    | B        | Performance information (differences of throughput)                         |

### Compute

Table 202: Compute Service - List of Monitored Items

| Monitored Item       | Type | Units    | Description               |
|----------------------|------|----------|---------------------------|
| fcx.compute.instance | G    | instance | Number of virtual servers |
| fcx.compute.cpu_util | G    | %        | CPU usage rate            |
| fcx.compute.vcpus    | G    | vcpu     | Number of vCPUs           |

| Monitored Item                           | Type | Units     | Description                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------|------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fcx.compute.disk.read.requests           | C    | request   | Number of disk reads                                                                                                    |
| fcx.compute.disk.read.requests.rate      | G    | request/s | Number of disk reads per second                                                                                         |
| fcx.compute.disk.write.requests          | C    | request   | Number of disk writes                                                                                                   |
| fcx.compute.disk.write.requests.rate     | G    | request/s | Number of disk writes per second                                                                                        |
| fcx.compute.disk.read.bytes              | C    | B         | Number of disk bytes read                                                                                               |
| fcx.compute.disk.read.bytes.rate         | G    | B/s       | Number of disk bytes read per second                                                                                    |
| fcx.compute.disk.write.bytes             | C    | B         | Number of disk bytes written                                                                                            |
| fcx.compute.disk.write.bytes.rate        | G    | B/s       | Number of disk bytes written per second                                                                                 |
| fcx.compute.disk.root.size               | G    | GB        | Capacity of root disk                                                                                                   |
| fcx.compute.network.incoming.bytes       | C    | B         | Number of bytes received by the network interface                                                                       |
| fcx.compute.network.incoming.bytes.rate  | G    | B/s       | Number of bytes received by the network interface per second                                                            |
| fcx.compute.network.outgoing.bytes       | C    | B         | Number of bytes sent by the network interface                                                                           |
| fcx.compute.network.outgoing.bytes.rate  | G    | B/s       | Number of bytes sent by the network interface per second                                                                |
| fcx.compute.instance.status_check.failed | G    | count     | Status check information for instance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0: Normal</li> <li>• 1: Error</li> </ul> |

## Storage

Table 203: Block Storage - List of Monitored Items

| Monitored Item               | Type | Units | Description               |
|------------------------------|------|-------|---------------------------|
| fcx.blockstorage.volume.size | G    | GB    | Capacity of block storage |

Table 204: Object Storage Service - List of Monitored Items

| Monitored Item           | Type | Units | Description          |
|--------------------------|------|-------|----------------------|
| fcx.storage.objects.size | G    | B     | Total size of object |

## Image Archiving Service

Table 205: Image Archiving Service - List of Monitored Items

| Monitored Item | Type | Units | Description            |
|----------------|------|-------|------------------------|
| fcx.image.size | G    | B     | Size of uploaded image |

## Database

Table 206: Database Environment Service - List of Monitored Items

| Monitored Item                        | Type | Units      | Description                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------|------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fcx.database.disk.bin_log.size        | G    | B          | Size of disk area used exclusively for binary log on master                     |
| fcx.database.cpu_util                 | G    | %          | CPU usage rate                                                                  |
| fcx.database.connections              | G    | connection | Number of current database connections                                          |
| fcx.database.disk.wait.requests       | G    | request    | Number of unprocessed disk I/O access requests (read/write requests)            |
| fcx.database.memory.free              | G    | B          | Amount of available RAM                                                         |
| fcx.database.disk.free                | G    | B          | Amount of available storage space                                               |
| fcx.database.replica.lag              | G    | s          | Lag from source virtual database server to read replica virtual database server |
| fcx.database.swap.size                | G    | B          | Size of swap space used for virtual database server                             |
| fcx.database.disk.read.requests.rate  | G    | request/s  | Average number of disk read operations per second                               |
| fcx.database.disk.write.requests.rate | G    | request/s  | Average number of disk write operations per second                              |
| fcx.database.disk.read.latency        | G    | s          | Average time required for a single disk read operation                          |
| fcx.database.disk.write.latency       | G    | s          | Average time required for a single disk write operation                         |
| fcx.database.disk.read.bytes.rate     | G    | B/s        | Average number of bytes read from the disk per second                           |
| fcx.database.disk.write.bytes.rate    | G    | B/s        | Average number of bytes written to the disk per second                          |

## A.8 Formula for Estimation

When you use the functions of K5 IaaS, you may need to estimate the setting values. This section describes the reasons for the setting values and how to estimate them.



Note

The estimation formulas use parameter names in the API so that you can refer to the correct numeric values. Refer to API Reference Manual as needed.

## Formula for Estimating Cool Down Period after Auto-Scaling

If you use auto-scaling and the cool down period is not specified appropriately, scaling occurs without sufficient time after the previous scaling. This may cause unexpected behavior and undesirable effects, including the creation of excess resources. For example, if CPU usage rate is used as a threshold value and the cool down period is not specified appropriately, the virtual servers added by the first scale out may cause other virtual servers to be added one after another before load balancing occurs.

To prevent scaling from occurring more frequently than expected, specify the cool down period as whichever is the larger of the two values produced by the following two formulas:

- Formula for calculating a cool down period in case of scaling out (in seconds)

```
(<Time required for creating a virtual server> + <HealthCheckGracePeriod
value of FCX::AutoScaling::AutoScalingGroup>) x <ScalingAdjustment
value of FCX::AutoScaling::ScalingPolicy> + <Time required for deleting
a virtual server> x 5 + <period value of OS::Ceilometer::Alarm> x
<evaluation_periods value of OS::Ceilometer::Alarm>
```

- Formula for calculating a cool down period in case of scaling in (in seconds)

```
<Time required for deleting a virtual server> x <ScalingAdjustment
value of FCX::AutoScaling::ScalingPolicy> + <period value
of OS::Ceilometer::Alarm> x <evaluation_periods value of
OS::Ceilometer::Alarm>
```

## A.9 Setup of SQL Server

### A.9.1 SQL Server 2014 Standard Edition Usage Guide

This section describes the procedure to make SQL Server available after creating a virtual server from the "Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard Edition + SQL Server 2014 Standard Edition" image.

#### Before you begin

Create a virtual server using an image with SQL Server 2014 Standard Edition installed.

#### About this task

Complete the setup of SQL Server 2014 by following the procedure below.

#### Procedure

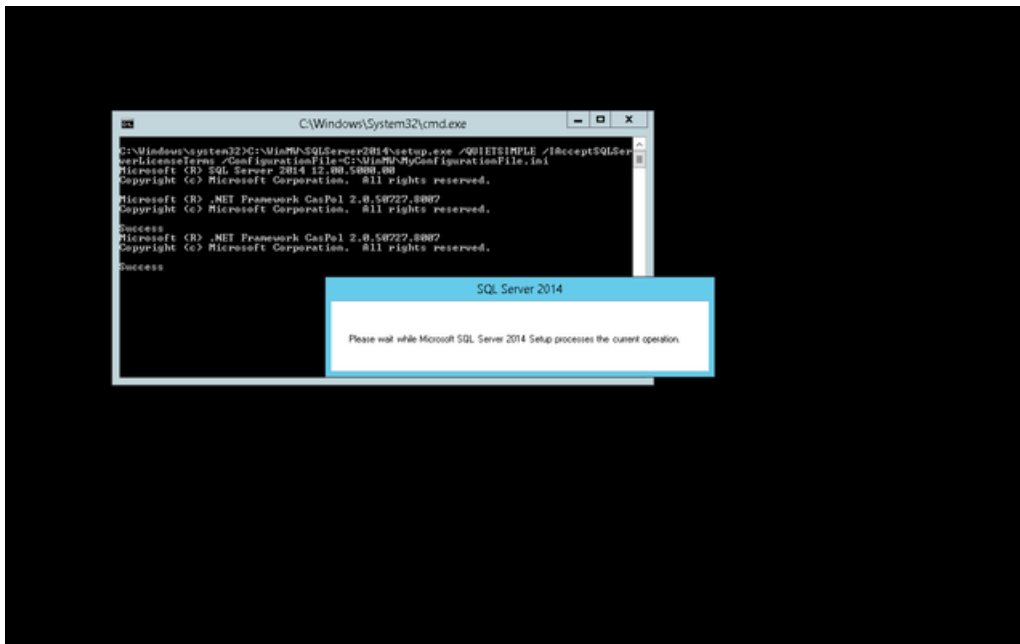
1. Confirm that the virtual server has started, and then log on to the virtual server as the default user "k5user."



Note

After logging on to the virtual server, do not stop or release the virtual server until the following setup procedure has been completed.

2. Installation of SQL Server 2014 automatically starts as shown below.

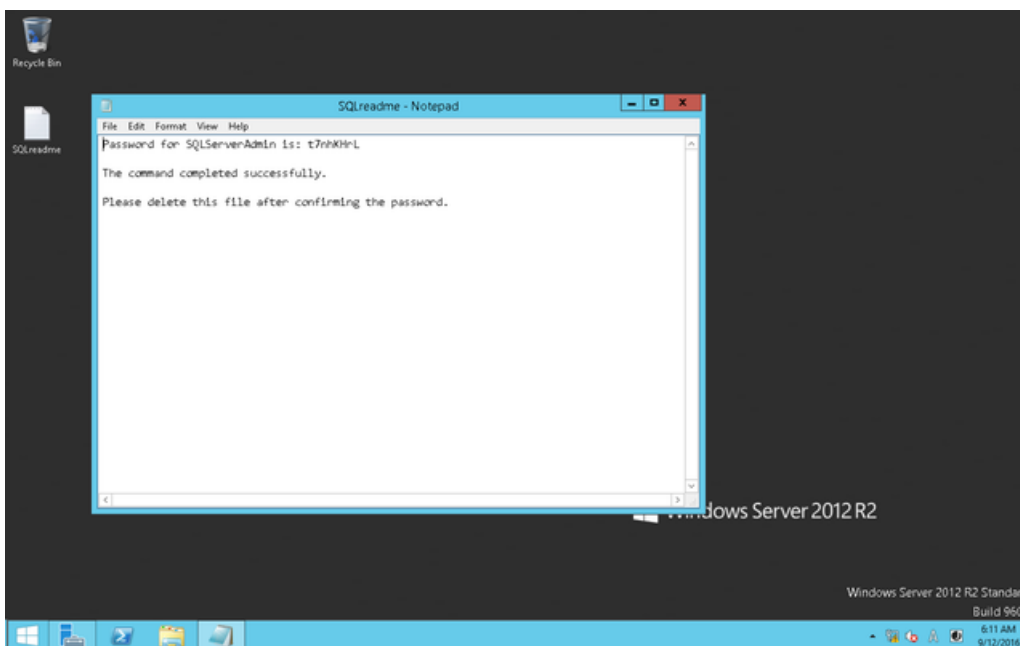


3. When installation is completed, the password file for the SQL Server administration account is created on the desktop.

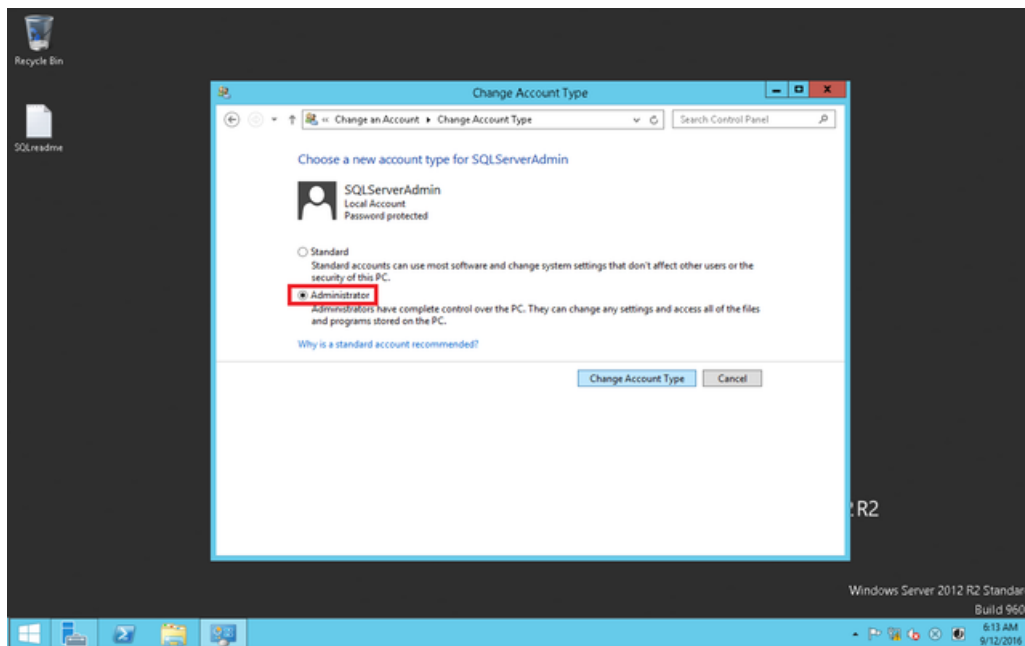


The SQL Server administration account name is "SQLServerAdmin."

Tip



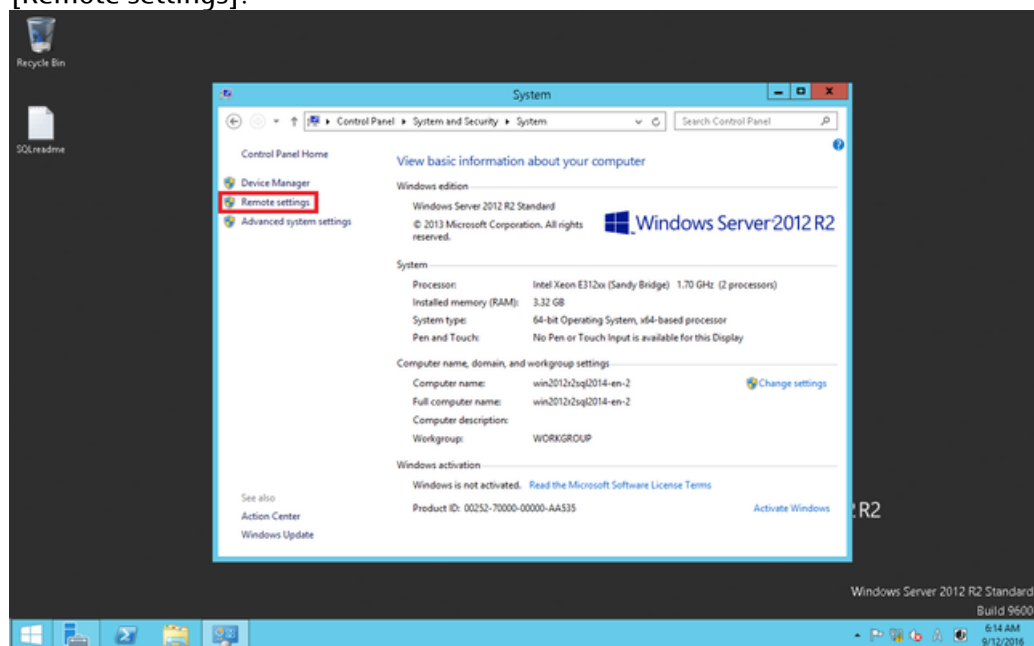
4. To use the "SQLServerAdmin" account to connect to Integration Services, change the account type to [Administrator].



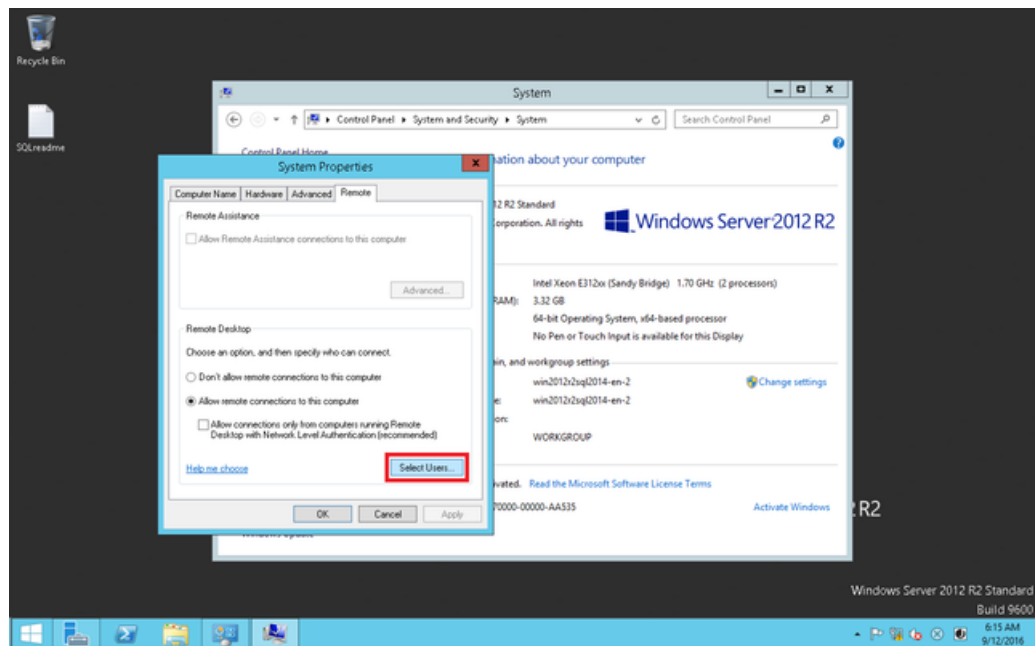
Tip

To use the "SQLServerAdmin" account as is without changing to an Administrator account, add "SQLServerAdmin" to the remote desktop users by following the procedure below.

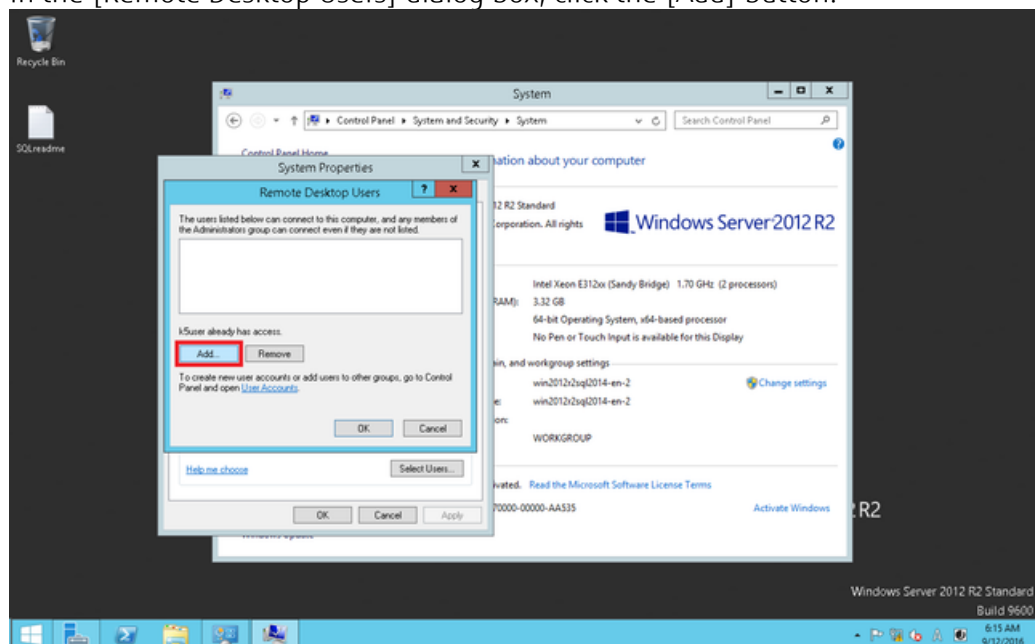
1. From the Start menu, click [Control Panel] > [System and Security] > [System] > [Remote settings].



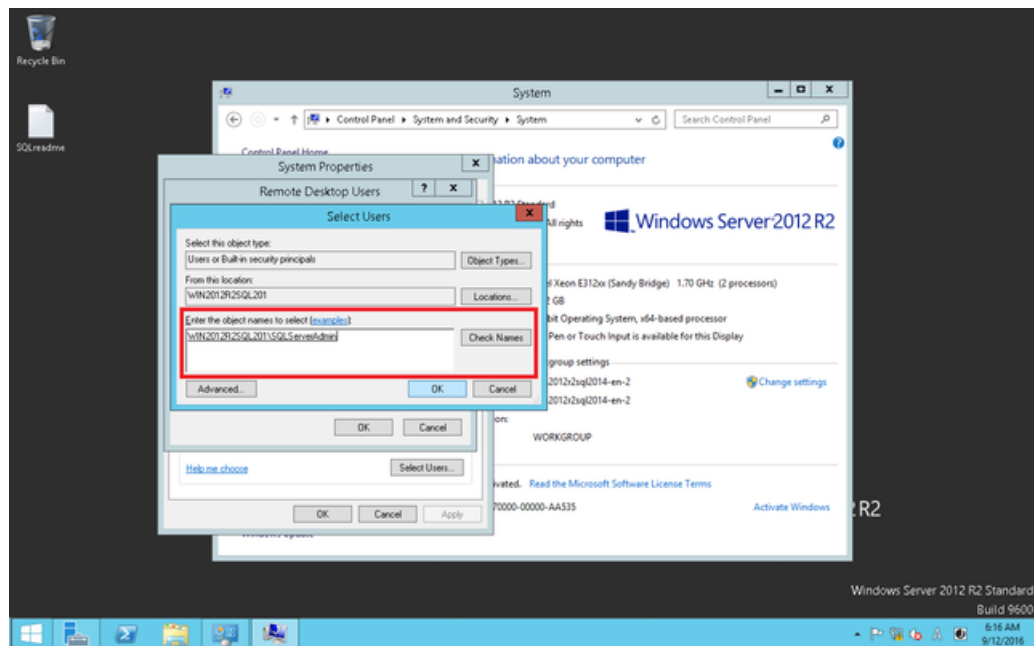
2. In the [Remote Desktop] dialog box, click the [Select Users] button.



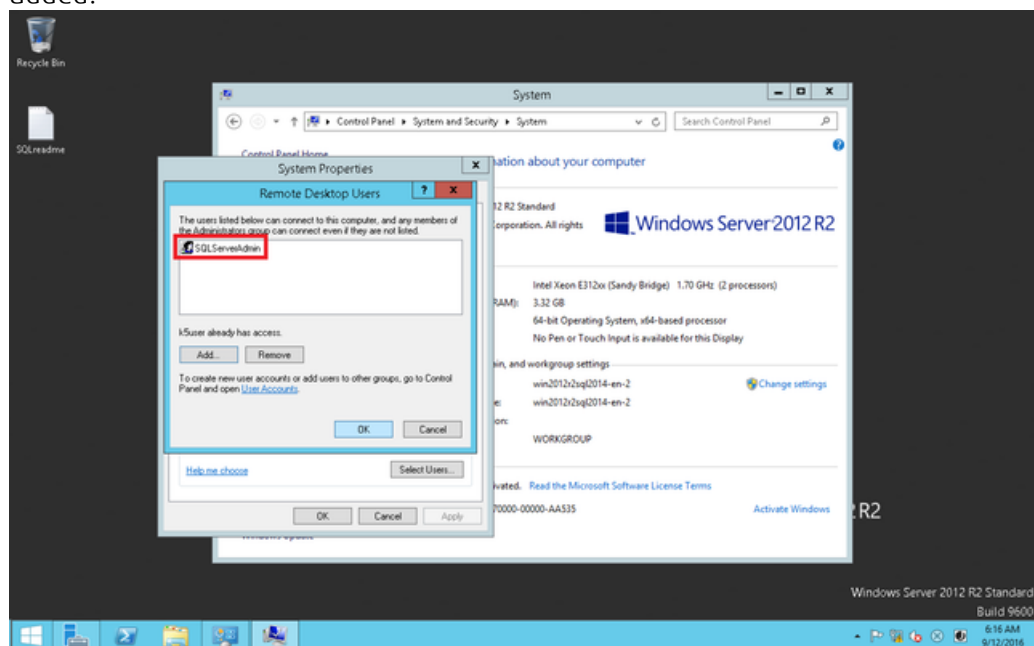
3. In the [Remote Desktop Users] dialog box, click the [Add] button.



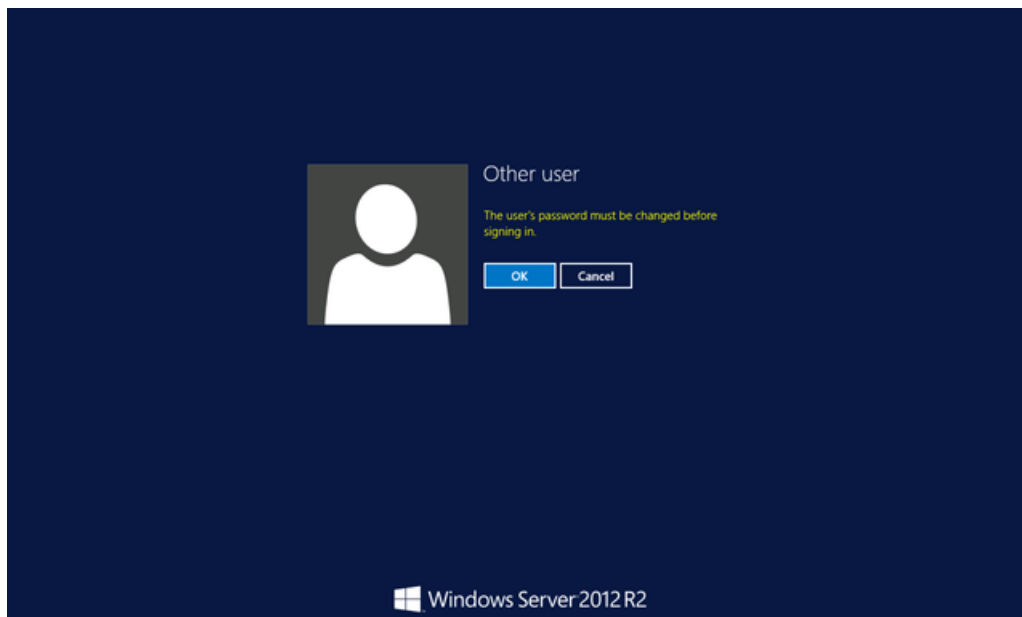
4. In the [Select Users] dialog box, enter "SQLServerAdmin" in the [Enter the object names to select] field and click the [Check Names] button.



5. Click the [OK] button.
6. In the [Remote Desktop Users] dialog box, confirm that "SQLServerAdmin" has been added.



5. Restart the virtual server.
6. When the server starts up, log on to Windows as "SQLServerAdmin."  
When the logon is completed, the dialog box to prompt a password change appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to change the password.



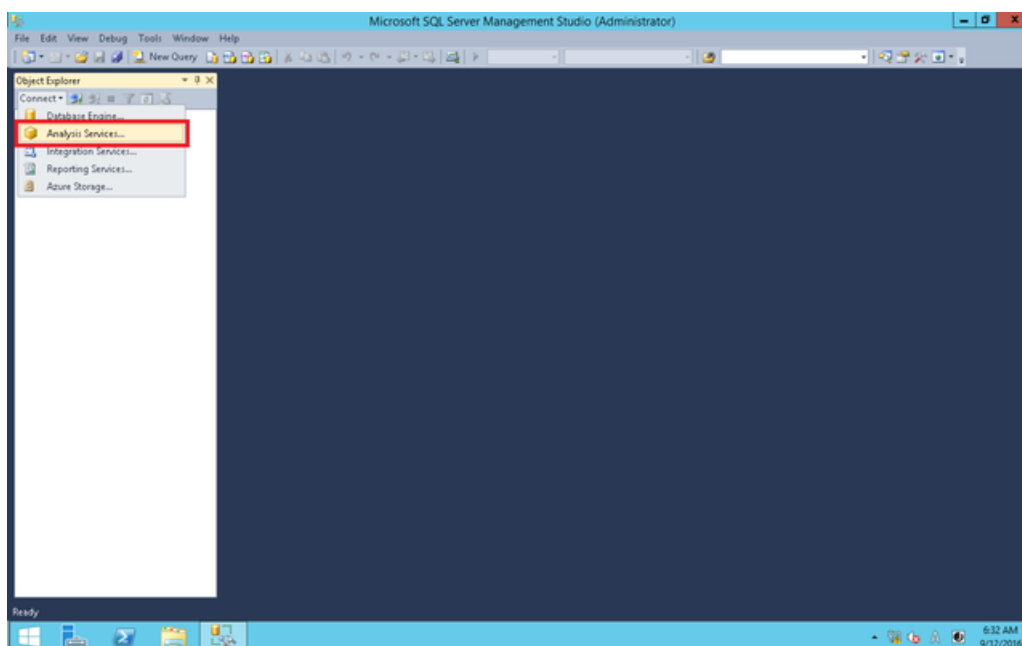
7. Select [Apps] > [SQL Server Management Studio].

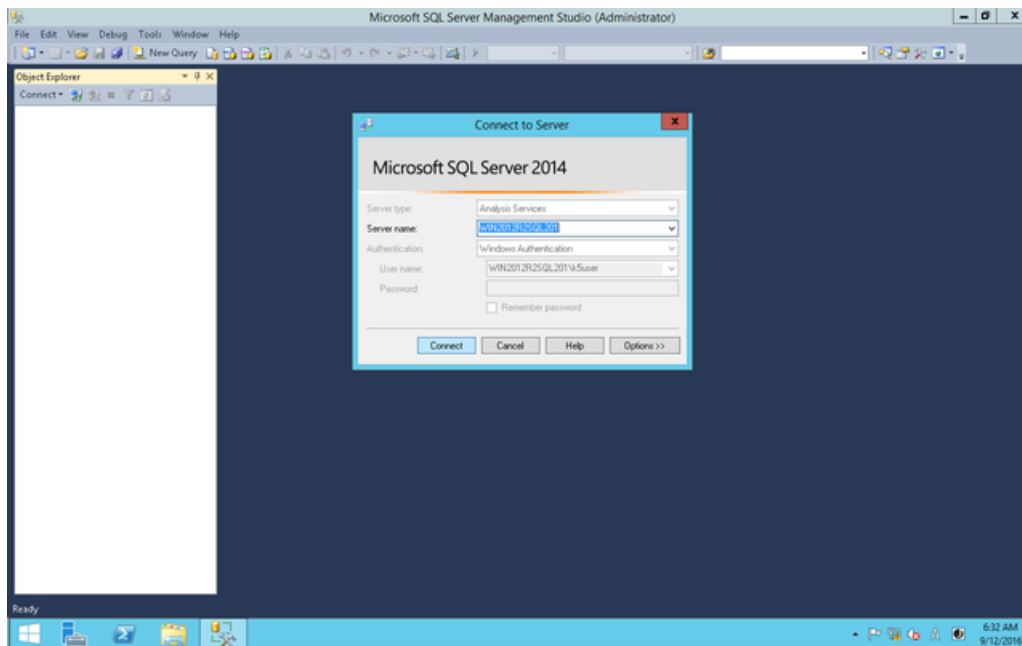


Tip

1. When you select SQL Server Management Studio, right-click it and then click [Run as administrator].
2. In [User Account Control], enter the password for k5user.

8. Confirm that a connection can be established with the "SQLServerAdmin" account.





This completes the setup procedure.



Tip

Table 207: List of Execution Accounts for SQL Server Related Services

| Service                                  | Account Name                                        |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| SQL Server Agent                         | NT Service\SQLSERVERAGENT                           |
| SQL Server Database Engine               | NT Service\MSSQLSERVER                              |
| SQL Server Analysis Services             | NT Service\MSSQLServerOLAPService                   |
| SQL Server Reporting Services            | NT Service\ReportServer                             |
| SQL Server Integration Services          | NT Service\MsDtsServer120                           |
| SQL Server Distributed Replay Client     | NT Service\SQL Server Distributed Replay Client     |
| SQL Server Distributed Replay Controller | NT Service\SQL Server Distributed Replay Controller |

FUJITSU Cloud Service K5 IaaS  
Features Handbook 1.10 version

Published Date November, 2016  
All Rights Reserved, Copyright FUJITSU LIMITED 2015-2016

- Reprinting of part or the whole of the contents of this document will be changed without prior notice for improvement.
- Reprinting of part or the whole of the contents of this document is strictly forbidden.